



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

ELEMENTARY CLASS BOOK
OF
MODERN GEOGRAPHY

BY
WILLIAM HUGHES, F.R.G.S.

NEW & REVISED EDITION

PHILIPS' SERIES OF SCHOOL ATLASES,

EDITED BY

WILLIAM HUGHES, F.R.G.S.,

Late Professor of Geography in King's College, London.

| | |
|--|-------|
| PHILIPS' THREEPENNY ATLAS , containing 16 Maps. Foolscap 4to, full colored, in neat cover | s. d. |
| | 0 3 |
| PHILIPS' PREPARATORY ATLAS , containing 16 Maps. Crown 4to, full colored, in neat cover | 0 6 |
| PHILIPS' PREPARATORY OUTLINE ATLAS . 16 Maps. Crown 4to, printed on fine cr.-wave paper, in neat cover | 0 6 |
| PHILIPS' PREPARATORY ATLAS OF BLANK PROJECTIONS . 16 Maps. Crown 4to, in neat cover | 0 6 |
| PHILIPS' "STANDARD" ATLAS , containing 24 Maps and Diagram of Geographical Terms. Foolscap 4to, neat cover | 0 6 |
| PHILIPS' "STANDARD" OUTLINE ATLAS . Containing 24 Maps. Foolscap 4to, in neat cover | 0 6 |
| PHILIPS' FIRST SCHOOL ATLAS . <i>New and enlarged edition</i> . Containing 24 Maps, full colored. Crown 4to, cloth .. | 1 0 |
| PHILIPS' SHILLING ATLAS OF MODERN GEOGRAPHY . 12 Imperial 4to Maps. Imperial 4to, illustrated cover .. | 1 0 |
| PHILIPS' ATLAS FOR BEGINNERS . 32 Maps. <i>New and improved edition</i> , with Consulting Index. Crown 4to, cloth .. | 2 6 |
| PHILIPS' HANDY ATLAS OF GENERAL GEOGRAPHY . 32 Maps, with Index. Crown 8vo, cloth lettered | 2 6 |
| PHILIPS' YOUNG SCHOLAR'S ATLAS . <i>New and enlarged edition</i> , containing 24 Maps. Imp. 4to, bound in cloth .. | 2 6 |
| PHILIPS' INTRODUCTORY ATLAS . <i>New edition, revised and enlarged</i> . 24 Maps, with Index. Imp. 8vo, cloth .. | 3 6 |
| PHILIPS' YOUNG STUDENT'S ATLAS . <i>New edition, revised and enlarged</i> , containing 36 Maps. Imperial 4to, cloth .. | 3 6 |
| PHILIPS' SELECT ATLAS OF MODERN GEOGRAPHY . <i>New edition, revised and enlarged</i> . 36 Maps, with Consulting Index. Imperial 8vo, bound in cloth | 5 0 |
| PHILIPS' STUDENT'S ATLAS , containing 43 Modern and 5 Ancient Maps. <i>New edition, revised and enlarged</i> | 7 6 |

George PH

London and Liverpool

PHILIPS' SERIES OF SCHOOL ATLASES.

| | |
|--|------|
| PHILIPS' COMPREHENSIVE ATLAS , containing 42 Modern <i>s. d.</i> and 18 Ancient Maps, with Index. <i>New edition, revised</i> <i>and enlarged.</i> Imp. 8vo. strongly half-bound | 10 6 |
| THE TRAINING COLLEGE ATLAS. A series of Twenty-four Maps, by WILLIAM HUGHES, F.R.G.S. <i>New and</i> <i>enlarged edition</i> , extended and completed by E. G RAVENSTEIN, F.R.G.S. Medium folio, bound in cloth .. | 18 0 |
| PHILIPS' ATLAS OF THE COUNTRIES OF EUROPE. 16 Colored Maps, including a Map of the World and a General Map of Europe. Crown 4to, in neat cover .. | 0 6 |
| PHILIPS' ATLAS OF WALES. 12 Maps of the separate Coun- ties. Constructed by JOHN BARTHOLOMEW, F.R.G.S. Crown 4to, neat cover | 0 6 |
| PHILIPS' ATLAS OF THE BRITISH COLONIES. 16 Maps, in- cluding a Map of the British Empire throughout the World. Crown 4to, in neat cover | 0 6 |
| PHILIPS' ATLAS OF THE BRITISH EMPIRE THROUGHOUT THE WORLD. 23 Maps, with Notes, by JOHN BARTHOLOMEW, F.R.G.S. Imperial 8vo, cloth .. | 3 6 |
| PHILIPS' PHYSICAL ATLAS FOR BEGINNERS. 12 Maps. <i>New edition.</i> Crown 4to, stiff cover, 1s.; cloth .. | 1 6 |
| PHILIPS' SCHOOL ATLAS OF PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY. <i>New</i> <i>and cheaper edition.</i> Imperial 8vo, bound in cloth .. | 5 0 |
| PHILIPS' SCHOOL ATLAS OF SCRIPTURE GEOGRAPHY. 12 Maps. Crown 4to, stiff cover, 1s.; or bound in cloth .. | 1 6 |
| PHILIPS' SMALLER SCRIPTURE ATLAS. <i>New edition.</i> Con- taining 12 Maps, illustrated cover, 6d.; or bound in cloth .. | 1 0 |
| PHILIPS' SCHOOL ATLAS OF CLASSICAL GEOGRAPHY. 18 Maps, with Consulting Index of Ancient and Modern Names. <i>Cheaper edition.</i> Medium 4to, cloth .. | 3 6 |
| PHILIPS' HANDY CLASSICAL ATLAS. 18 Maps. Medium 8vo, bound in cloth | 2 6 |
| PHILIPS' IMPERIAL OUTLINE ATLAS. Two Series, each containing 12 Maps, in cover, each | 1 0 |
| PHILIPS' IMPERIAL ATLAS OF BLANK PROJECTIONS. Two Series, each containing 12 Maps, in cover, each .. | 1 0 |
| PHILIPS' OUTLINE ATLAS FOR BEGINNERS. Two Series, each containing 16 Maps, neat cover, each | 1 0 |
| PHILIPS' BLANK PROJECTIONS FOR BEGINNERS. Two Series, each containing 16 Maps, neat cover, each .. | 1 0 |
| PHILIPS' OUTLINE ATLAS , for Students preparing for the Oxford or Cambridge Local Examinations. In neat cover. Junior Classes, 1s. 6d. Senior Classes. .. | 2 0 |

George Philip and Son, Publishers, London and Liverpool.

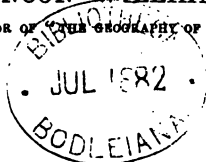
ELEMENTARY CLASS-BOOK
OF
MODERN GEOGRAPHY.

ELEMENTARY CLASS-BOOK
OF
MODERN GEOGRAPHY.

BY
WILLIAM HUGHES, F.R.G.S.,
LATE PROFESSOR OF GEOGRAPHY IN KING'S COLLEGE, LONDON.

NEW EDITION,

REVISED BY
J. FRANCON WILLIAMS, F.R.G.S.,
AUTHOR OF "THE GEOGRAPHY OF THE OCEANS."



LONDON:
GEORGE PHILIP & SON, 32, FLEET STREET;
LIVERPOOL: CAXTON BUILDINGS, SOUTH JOHN STREET, AND
49 & 51, SOUTH CASTLE STREET.
1882.

[Entered at Stationers' Hall.]

201. 9 280

Crown 4to, strongly bound in cloth, price 2/6,

New Edition: Revised and Enlarged.

PHILIPS' ATLAS FOR BEGINNERS,

Containing 32 Maps, with a carefully compiled Index. The Maps beautifully printed in colours, and thoroughly revised, so as to show every recent discovery and political change of importance.

* * This Atlas is specially designed to accompany Professor Hughes's
"Elementary Class-Book of Modern Geography."

PHILIPS' OUTLINE ATLAS FOR BEGINNERS, being Outlines of the Maps in Philips' "Atlas for Beginners." Size—10 inches by 8 inches. Printed on fine Drawing Paper. Two Series, each containing 16 Maps, stitched in neat cover, 1s.

PHILIPS' ATLAS OF BLANK PROJECTIONS FOR BEGINNERS, Uniform in size and scale with the "Outline Atlas." Size—10 inches by 8 inches. Printed on fine Drawing Paper. Two Series, each containing 16 Maps, stitched in neat cover, 1s.

GEORGE PHILIP & SON, PUBLISHERS, LONDON AND LIVERPOOL.

CONTENTS.

| | PAGE |
|---|------|
| INTRODUCTION, | I |
| DEFINITIONS OF GEOGRAPHICAL TERMS, | 1 |
| LAND, | 5 |
| WATER, | 8 |
| DIVISIONS OF THE EARTH, | 11 |
| EUROPE, | 11 |
| THE BRITISH ISLES, | 23 |
| ENGLAND AND WALES, | 23 |
| SCOTLAND, | 38 |
| IRELAND, | 46 |
| FRANCE, | 52 |
| BELGIUM, | 57 |
| HOLLAND, OR THE NETHERLANDS, | 59 |
| SWITZERLAND, | 61 |
| THE GERMAN EMPIRE, | 63 |
| PRUSSIA, | 66 |
| SMALLER STATES OF THE GERMAN EMPIRE | 67 |
| AUSTRO-HUNGARIAN EMPIRE, | 68 |
| DENMARK, | 71 |
| SWEDEN AND NORWAY, | 73 |
| RUSSIA, | 75 |
| TURKEY IN EUROPE, | 78 |
| TURKEY PROPER, | 79 |
| BULGARIA, | 80 |
| EASTERN ROUMELIA, | 80 |
| BOSNIA AND HERZEGOVINA, | 80 |
| MONTENEGRO, | 80 |

| | PAGE |
|---|------|
| SERVIA, | 80 |
| ROUMANIA, | 81 |
| GREECE, | 82 |
| ITALY, | 84 |
| SPAIN, | 88 |
| PORTUGAL, | 92 |
| ASIA, | 94 |
| TURKEY IN ASIA, | 100 |
| ARABIA, | 103 |
| PERSIA, | 106 |
| BELUCHISTAN, | 108 |
| AFGHANISTAN, | 109 |
| INDIA, | 110 |
| INDO-CHINESE COUNTRIES, | 117 |
| CHINESE EMPIRE, | 119 |
| CHINA, | 120 |
| TIBET, | 122 |
| MONGOLIA, | 122 |
| MANCHOORIA, | 123 |
| COREA, | 123 |
| TURKESTAN, | 123 |
| ASIATIC RUSSIA, | 124 |
| THE CAUCASUS, | 124 |
| SIBERIA, | 125 |
| RUSSIAN CENTRAL ASIA, | 127 |
| MALAY ARCHIPELAGO, | 127 |
| JAPAN, | 129 |
| AFRICA, | 131 |
| THE ATLAS REGION, OR NORTHERN AFRICA, | 135 |
| MOROCCO, | 136 |
| ALGERIA, | 136 |
| TUNIS, | 136 |
| TRIPOLI, | 137 |

CONTENTS.

v

| | PAGE |
|---|------|
| EGYPT, | 137 |
| NUBIA, | 138 |
| ABYSSINIA, | 139 |
| CENTRAL AFRICA, | 140 |
| WESTERN AFRICA, | 141 |
| EASTERN AFRICA, | 143 |
| SOUTHERN AFRICA, | 143 |
| THE CAPE COLONY, | 143 |
| NATAL, | 145 |
| THE ORANGE RIVER FREE STATE, | 145 |
| THE TRANSVAAL, | 145 |
| ZULULAND, | 146 |
| ISLANDS OF AFRICA, | 146 |
| AMERICA, | 148 |
| NORTH AMERICA, | 148 |
| BRITISH NORTH AMERICA, | 153 |
| GREENLAND, | 156 |
| ALASKA, | 156 |
| UNITED STATES, | 156 |
| MEXICO, | 160 |
| CENTRAL AMERICA, | 161 |
| THE WEST INDIES, | 162 |
| SOUTH AMERICA, | 164 |
| BRAZIL, | 167 |
| GUIANA, | 169 |
| VENEZUELA, | 169 |
| COLOMBIA, | 170 |
| ECUADOR, | 171 |
| PERU, | 171 |
| BOLIVIA, | 172 |
| CHILI, | 173 |
| LA PLATA, OR THE ARGENTINE CONFEDERATION, | 173 |

| | PAGE |
|---|------|
| PARAGUAY, | 173 |
| URUGUAY, | 173 |
| PATAGONIA, | 173 |
| FALKLAND ISLANDS, | 173 |
| | |
| AUSTRALIA, | 175 |
| THE AUSTRALIAN COLONIES, | 178 |
| | |
| POLYNESIA, | 180 |
| NEW ZEALAND, | 180 |
| SMALLER ISLANDS OF POLYNESIA, | 181 |

AN ELEMENTARY CLASS-BOOK
OF
MODERN GEOGRAPHY.

INTRODUCTION.

GEOGRAPHY is a description of the Earth ; that is, an account of the Lands and Seas which constitute the surface of the earth, with their respective Climates, Productions, and Inhabitants. Such a description involves—

1. An account of the natural features of the earth's surface, and of the climate, minerals, plants, and animals which belong to different regions.
2. A description of the various countries into which the earth is divided, with the condition and pursuits of their inhabitants, and the names and places of the principal towns in each.

The description of the natural features of the globe comes under the head of **Physical Geography** ; that of the different countries into which the earth is divided is distinguished as **descriptive** (or **Political**) **Geography**. In the account of each country, the natural features are here noticed first, the inhabitants next, and the various divisions of the country, with the towns in each, last in order.

Definitions of Geographical Terms.

1. The **EARTH** is very nearly a globe in shape—that is, it is round (like a ball or an orange). It measures about 25,000 miles round, and a straight line supposed to pass through its

centre would be about 8,000 miles long. The former of these measures is called the **Circumference** of the earth, the latter its **Diameter**.

2. The earth is constantly turning round, in a direction from west to east, upon an imaginary line (called its *Axis*), which passes through its centre, and which therefore forms one of its diameters. This motion is the cause of day and night, and is called its *Daily* or **Diurnal Motion**, because the earth rotates on its axis once a day.

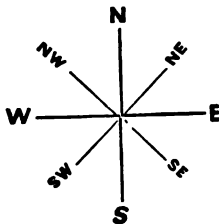
3. The earth's **Axis** is the imaginary line upon which it turns. Its extremities are called the **Poles** of the earth. One of them is the North Pole, the other the South Pole.

4. The earth also revolves round the sun once a year. This motion causes the four seasons—Spring, Summer, Autumn, and Winter, and is called its **Annual Motion**.

5. The **Equator** is a circle drawn round the earth midway between the poles—that is, at exactly the same distance from each pole.

The equator thus divides the globe into two halves or *Hemispheres*—a Northern Hemisphere and a Southern Hemisphere. The northern hemisphere is that half of the globe which is between the equator and the north pole, and the southern hemisphere is the half that is between the equator and the south pole.

6. North, South, East, and West are terms used to express the relative positions of places to one another. They are the four **Cardinal Points** of the compass—an instrument used to determine the respective bearings of places.



There are altogether thirty-two points of the compass—twenty-eight of the number being intermediate between the four cardinal points. The point lying midway between north and east is called *North-east*; that midway between north and west is *North-west*. In like manner the points lying midway between the east and west and the south points are called *South-east* and *South-west*.

7. A **Meridian** is a line drawn round the earth in the exact direction of North and South—that is, passing through the poles, and crossing the equator at right angles.

Such a line may be supposed to pass through any given place on the earth's surface (and may, of course, be actually drawn upon the surface of the artificial globe); it is then called the meridian of that place. Thus, a line drawn through London in the exact direction of north and south is called the Meridian of London.

8. The **Positions of Places** on the earth's surface are indicated by means of latitude and longitude.

Latitude is distance in the direction of north and south. *Longitude* is distance in the direction of east and west. The amount either of latitude or longitude is expressed in degrees. Every circle, whether great or small, is supposed to be divided into 360 equal parts or *Degrees*. A quarter of a circle (or *quadrant*) contains, therefore, 90 degrees.

9. **Latitude** is distance measured, in degrees, from the equator towards either pole; and the greatest latitude which a place can have is 90 degrees—that is, the extreme distance of either pole from the line of the equator.

All places situated between the equator and the north pole are said to be in North Latitude; all places that lie between the equator and the south pole are in South Latitude.

10. **Longitude** is distance to the east or west of any given meridian, and is measured half-way round the globe—that is, 180 degrees upon each side of any meridian—and is called East Longitude or West Longitude, according as it is to the east or to the west of the meridian that is used.

In England we use the meridian supposed to pass through Greenwich (near London), where our National Observatory is situated. Hence we say that a place is so many degrees longitude east of Greenwich, or west of Greenwich.

11. Every **Degree** is divided into sixty equal parts called *Minutes*, and every minute is divided into sixty equal parts or *Seconds*.

The following signs are used to express degrees, minutes, and seconds: ° ' ". If it is necessary to express distances (either of latitude or longitude) which are less than a degree, we say that a place is in so many degrees, so many minutes, and so many seconds, using these signs. Thus, 24° 16' 8" means twenty-four degrees, sixteen minutes,

and eight seconds; just in the same way that, in order to express an amount of money, we might say £24 16s. 8d., that is, twenty-four pounds, sixteen shillings, and eight pence.

12. **Parallels of Latitude** are circles drawn round the globe in a direction parallel to the equator.

Parallels are usually drawn upon artificial globes and maps at every ten (or sometimes every five) degrees apart. They serve to show, in a general way, the latitudes of various places. Places that are on (or near) the same parallel have, of course, the same (or nearly the same) latitude.

13. **Meridian Lines** are drawn in the exact direction of north and south, and serve to show the longitudes of places.

Meridians are generally drawn upon globes and maps at distances either of five or ten degrees apart. Places that are on (or near) the same meridian have the same (or nearly the same) longitude.

14. The **Tropics** are circles drawn round the globe in a direction parallel to the equator, and at a distance of $23\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ from that line.

That drawn at $23\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ to the north of the equator is called the *Tropic of Cancer*: the similar circle drawn at $23\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ south of the equator is called the *Tropic of Capricorn*. These lines mark the farther distances, on either side of the equator, within which the sun is vertical.

15. The two **Polar Circles** are drawn round the globe in a direction parallel to the equator, and at distances of $23\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ from either pole.

The circle drawn at $23\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ from the north pole is distinguished as the *Arctic Circle*. That drawn at $23\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ from the south pole is called the *Antarctic Circle*. These circles mark the limits (from either pole) within which the sun remains wholly above the horizon for a term of more than twenty-four hours at one season of the year, or does not rise for a term of more than twenty-four hours at the opposite period of the year.

16. **Zones**.—The tropics and polar circles serve to divide the surface of the earth into five *Zones*—one torrid zone, two temperate zones, and two frigid zones.

(1) The **Torrid Zone** extends on either side of the equator, and is bounded on the north by the tropic of cancer, and on the south by the tropic of capricorn.

(2) The **North Temperate Zone** is the space between the tropic of cancer and the arctic circle.

(3) The **South Temperate Zone** lies between the tropic of capricorn and the antarctic circle.

(4) The **North Frigid Zone** embraces the space within the arctic circle surrounding the north pole.

(5) The **South Frigid Zone** comprises that within the antarctic circle surrounding the south pole.

. The *Torrid Zone* is the hottest part of the world, because there the sun is vertical, or directly overhead. The *Frigid Zones* are the coldest parts of the globe, for there the sun is, during a portion of the year, wholly absent—not rising above the horizon for weeks (or months) in continuous succession. The *Temperate Zones* (as the word “temperate” implies) are neither so hot as the torrid zone, nor so cold as the frigid zones.

The surface of the earth is divided into **LAND** and **WATER**. The land occupies little better than one-quarter of the whole. Nearly three-fourths of the earth's surface are covered by water.

I.—LAND.

The following terms are used to denote various portions of the land :—

1. **Continent**.—The largest divisions of land are called *Continents*. There are six Continents: Europe, Asia, Africa, North America, South America, and Australia.¹

(1) **Europe** is the north-western portion of the Old World, from the rest of which it is separated by the Mediterranean Sea and the Ural Mountains.

(2) **Asia** is the eastern, and by far the largest, portion of the Old World.

(3) **Africa** is the southern portion of the Old World, and is separated from Europe by the Mediterranean Sea, and from Asia by the Red Sea and the Isthmus of Suez.

¹ Europe, Asia, and Africa together form the Eastern Continent, or the *Old World*, so called because they were known to the nations of antiquity. America, often called the *New World*, was not discovered until a comparatively modern period—towards the close of the 15th century.

(4) **America**, though sometimes spoken of as *one* continent, is divided into two—viz., *North America* and *South America*, united only by the narrow Isthmus of Panama.

(5) **Australia** is an immense island lying to the south-east of Asia.¹

. Of the above divisions of the land, Europe, Asia, Africa, and Australia are in the *Eastern Hemisphere*, and North and South America in the *Western Hemisphere*.

2. **Island**.—A portion of land *entirely* surrounded by water is called an *Island*.

Borneo, Madagascar, Iceland, Great Britain—any one of which may be readily found upon the artificial globe, or on the map of the world—are examples of islands.

3. **Peninsula**.—A portion of land *nearly* surrounded by water is called a *Peninsula*.

Italy, Greece, Florida, Arabia, are examples of peninsulas. Sweden and Norway (together) also present an example of a peninsula ; so, too, do Spain and Portugal.

4. **Isthmus**.—A narrow neck of land which unites any two larger portions is called an *Isthmus*.

As, for example, the Isthmus of Suez, which unites Asia and Africa ; the Isthmus of Panama, which joins North and South America ; and the Isthmus of Corinth, which joins the southern part of Greece (the Morea) to the mainland.

5. **Coast**.—The line where the land and water meet is called the *Coast*.

The term **Coast** is used when *land*, and **Shore** is used when the *sea*, is spoken of. The **Beach** is that part of the land between the high and low water-marks.

6. **Cape**.—A point of land which advances beyond the general coast-line, so as to project or jut into the water, is called a *Cape* or *Point*.

The terms Promontory, Head, or Headland, are often applied to capes—the first more especially to high points of land. Cape Comorin (the southern point of India), Cape Horn (at the south of the New World), the Cape of Good Hope (in the south of Africa), and Flamborough Head (on the east coast of England), are examples of capes.

¹*Australia, New Zealand, and the numerous islands and Archipelagos in the Pacific, are sometimes classed together under the general name of Oceania.*

7. **Plain**.—A portion of land not much raised above the sea, and with a generally level surface, is called a *Plain* or *Lowland*.

Some of the great plains are distinguished by special names, such as—

The **Landes**, or sandy plains of S. W. France.

The **Steppes** of Russia and Central Asia, open and treeless plains.

The **Tundras** of Siberia, low swampy plains sloping into the Arctic Ocean.

The **Savannahs** and **Prairies** of North America.

The **Llanos** or grass flats of the Orinoco.

The **Selvas** or forest-plains of the Amazon. } In S. America.

The **Pampas** or thistly flats of La Plata. }

8. **Table-land**.—A tract of land which rises to a considerable height (as a thousand feet or upwards) above the level of the sea, is called a *Table-land* or *Plateau*.

The country called Tibet (in Central Asia) is an example of a plateau or table-land; so also is the interior of Spain, in the European quarter of the globe.

9. **Mountain**.—A smaller portion of land rising above the adjoining plain forms a *Hill* or *Mountain*. When many such elevations occur close beside one another, they form a *Mountain-group*, or if in succession in one line, a *Mountain-range* or *Chain*.

The Grampian Hills, in Scotland; the mountains called the Alps, between Italy and Switzerland; the Himalaya Mountains, in Asia, are examples.¹

. A narrow opening between two adjoining mountains is called a *Mountain-pass*, and also, in some cases, a *Defile* or *Ravine*. The passes over mountain-chains lie in some instances at vast heights above the plains below.

10. A **Volcano** is generally a conical elevation with a cup-like hollow at its summit called a *Crater*, from which lava, &c., are ejected.²

¹ The heights of places are generally expressed in feet, and are calculated from the level of the sea—that is, from the average level of the waters which cover so large a portion of the earth's surface. Thus we say of a mountain or a table-land that it is so many thousand feet above the level of the sea.

² Volcanoes are either *active*, as Vesuvius, or *extinct*, as Puy de Dôme, &c., or the Mountains of Auvergne.

11. **Valley.**—A sloping portion of land, bounded on either side by lands of greater height, forms a *Valley*. The forms, both of valleys and of hills, are infinitely varied. Sometimes the slopes are long and gentle. In other cases they are abrupt and steep, so that the valley passes gradually into a ravine or defile.

Valleys are generally named after the rivers which flow through them, as the *Valley of the Nile*. In Scotland the terms *Strath*, *Carse*, *Dale*, &c., are used, as *Strathmore*, &c.

12. **Desert.**—A tract of country which does not allow of sufficient cultivation to be fit for the settled abode of man, is called a *Desert*.

The vast region called the Sahara, in Africa, is the most prominent example. It is to the want of water that the sterility of such tracts is for the most part due. But even in the Sahara there are here and there a few fertile spots called *Oases*.

II. WATER.

The terms applied to various portions of the waters of the globe are the following :—

1. **Ocean.**—The vast expanse of water which covers the larger portion of the earth's surface is called the *Ocean*, and is divided by the intervening lands into three great basins—the Pacific, Atlantic, and Indian Oceans. The waters which lie around the north pole are, in addition, distinguished as the Arctic Ocean, and those in the neighbourhood of the antarctic circle are called the Antarctic or Southern Ocean. There are, therefore, in all, five oceans.

The *Pacific Ocean* is by far the largest of the oceans, and covers more than a third part of the earth's surface. It is oval in shape, and has no strictly inland seas. The *Atlantic Ocean* has the shape of a long valley, and winding from north to south in the shape of the letter S. To it belong the Mediterranean and other large inland seas. The *Indian Ocean* is much smaller than the Atlantic or the Pacific. The *Arctic*

Ocean is an almost circular basin, bounded by the northern coasts of Europe, Asia, and America. Neither the shape nor the size of the *Antarctic Ocean* is yet known.

2. Sea.—The word *sea* is sometimes used as an equivalent for ocean, but is more generally applied to less extensive portions of the water, situated near the land. A sea which penetrates within the land, so as to be nearly enclosed by it, is called an *Inland Sea*.

The Mediterranean is the largest of inland seas. The Red Sea, between Africa and Asia, and the Baltic Sea, in the north of Europe, are other examples.

3. Inlets, or indentations of the coast-line, are variously named according to their form and size.

(1) A **Bay** is a short arm of the sea indenting the land, or an open bend in the line of coast, as the *Bay of Biscay*.

(2) A **Gulf** is a longer arm of the sea, penetrating farther into the land, as the *Gulf of Venice*.

(3) A **Bight** is an open bend in the coast, as the *Bight of Biafra*.

(4) A **Creek** or **Cove** is a small opening in the coast.

(5) A **Firth** (**Flord**, or **Fjord**) is a narrow inlet, as the *Firth of Forth*.

(6) An **Estuary** is an inlet forming the mouth of a *tidal* river, as the *Estuary of the Thames*.

4. Strait—Channel.—The portions of water connecting larger expanses are called *Straits*, *Channels*, or *Sounds*.

(1) A **Strait** is a narrow arm of the sea connecting two larger portions, as the *Strait of Gibraltar*, which forms the entrance of the Mediterranean; the *Strait of Dover*, which unites the seas on the eastern and southern coasts of England; and the *Strait of Bab-el-Mandeb*, at the entrance of the Red Sea.

(2) A **Channel** is a broader arm of the sea, as the *English Channel*, between the coasts of England and France.

(3) A **Sound** is a narrow arm of the sea between an island and the mainland, as the *Sound*, between Sweden and the island of Zealand.

5. Lake.—A lake is a body of inland water surrounded by land.

The lakes of Geneva and Constance, in Switzerland; Lake Ladoga, in Russia; and Lake Superior, in North America, are examples. Small lakes often occur in mountainous countries, their beds consisting of

hollows or depressions in the land, in which the running waters have accumulated.

6. **River.**—A river is a stream of water running through the land, and generally rises in high ground, and discharges its waters into the sea, sometimes passing through one or more lakes on its way.

Almost every place has in its neighbourhood examples of small running streams or brooks: the junction of several such brooks, so that their waters become united in a larger channel or water-course, forms a river. The *Thames*, the *Severn*, and the *Shannon*, in our own islands, are among the most prominent examples of rivers; the *Danube* and the *Volga*, on the continent of Europe, are instances on a larger scale.

- (1) The **Source** of a river is where it *begins*.
- (2) The **Mouth** of a river is where it *ends*.
- (3) The **Bed** of a river is the hollow along which it *flows*.
- (4) The **Banks** of a river are the margins of land between which it flows—that on the right-hand side is the *right bank*, that on the left the *left bank*.
- (5) The **Length** of a river is the distance between its source and its mouth.
- (6) The **Width** of a river is the distance between its banks.
- (7) A **Tributary** or an **Affluent** is a small stream which joins a larger river.
- (8) The **Basin** of a river is the whole tract of country which is watered by it and its tributaries.

7. **Water-shed.**—A water-shed, or more correctly, “water-parting,” is the ground which divides two adjacent streams that flow in opposite directions.



This generally (but by no means always) consists of a high tract of land, sometimes a chain of mountains; and it is, in every case, formed by ground which is higher than that through which the streams actually flow, for the natural tendency of water is to run down a sloping ground, from a higher to a lower level. Some rivers, however, rise in ground which is nearly level, and at only a trifling height above the sea; and, in such cases, the watershed may consist of ground which does not *exhibit any marked elevation* above the adjoining plain.

DIVISIONS OF THE EARTH.

EUROPE, ASIA, AFRICA, AMERICA, AUSTRALIA, and POLYNESIA are the six great divisions of the Earth. Five of the number, as we have already seen, are continents—that is, large masses of land; the last mentioned of them, Polynesia, consists of a vast number of islands, which lie within the Pacific Ocean, and are surrounded by its waters.

EUROPE.

EUROPE lies entirely within the northern hemisphere, and forms the north-western portion of the Old World.

Boundaries.—Europe is bounded on the *north* by the Arctic Ocean; on the *west* by the Atlantic Ocean; on the *south* by the Mediterranean Sea, the Black Sea, and the chain of Mount Caucasus; and on the *east* by the Caspian Sea, the river Ural, and the range of the Ural Mountains.

Europe is divided from—

(1) **Asia** by the Ural Mountains, River Ural, Caspian Sea, Mount Caucasus, Black Sea, Sea of Marmora, and the Archipelago.

(2) **Africa** by the Mediterranean Sea.

(3) **North America** by the Atlantic Ocean.

Extent.—Europe measures about 2500 miles from north to south, and rather more than 3000 miles in its greatest dimensions east and west. Its area, or extent of surface, is 3,700,000 square miles.¹

Europe is therefore (next to Australia) the smallest of the continents; it being about *one-fifth* the size of Asia, *one-fourth* of America, *one-third* of Africa, and *one-fourteenth* of the total area of the land surface, or *one-fifty-third* part of the whole surface of the globe.

¹ A square mile is a space which measures one mile each way. It is in square miles that the size of countries is generally expressed. The whole surface of the globe is equal to 197,000,000 of square miles.

Coasts.—Very irregular, exhibiting a great many indentations, by means of which the waters of the adjoining seas penetrate far within the general line of its coast. This circumstance causes Europe to have a greater extent of coast-line, in proportion to its *size*, than is possessed by any of the other continents.¹

Inlets.—The principal inland seas, bays, and gulfs belonging to Europe are :—the Mediterranean, Sea of Marmora, Black Sea, and Sea of Azov, on the *south* ; the Caspian Sea, on the *south-east* ; the Bay of Biscay, English Channel, Irish Sea, North Sea or German Ocean, Zuyder Zee, and Baltic Sea, on the *west* ; and the White Sea on the *north*.

(1) The *Mediterranean* is the largest inland sea in the world, and includes the Gulf of Lyons, the Gulf of Genoa, the Adriatic Sea, the Gulf of Corinth, and the Archipelago.

(2) The *Black Sea* is subject to sudden and violent storms and dense fogs, whence its name, "*Kara Deniz*,"—the "*Black Sea*."

(3) The *Bay of Biscay* is frequently disturbed by violent storms.

(4) The *North Sea* and the *English Channel* are between Great Britain and the Continent.

(5) The *Irish Sea* is between Ireland and Great Britain.

(6) The *Baltic Sea* includes the Gulfs of Bothnia, Finland, and Riga, and is generally shallow, especially in the north.

(7) The *Zuyder Zee* was formed by an irruption of the sea in the 13th century.

Channels and Straits.—The principal are :—

(1) The *Skager-rack* and *Cattegat*, leading from the North Sea into—

(2) The *Sound*, *Great Belt*, and *Little Belt*—three straits opening into the Baltic Sea.

(3) *Strait of Dover*, connecting the North Sea and the English Channel.

(4) *Strait of Gibraltar*, leading from the Atlantic Ocean to the Mediterranean Sea.

(5) *Strait of Messina*, between Italy and Sicily.

(6) *Strait of Bonifacio*, between Corsica and Sardinia.

(7) The *Dardanelles*, leading from the Mediterranean to the Sea of Marmora.

¹ The coast-line of Europe is estimated at 19,500 miles, or 1 mile of coast to every 190 square miles of area. In Russia no part is more than 700 miles from the sea ; in all other European countries the distance is everywhere under 400 miles.

Channel of Constantinople, or Bosphorus, leading from the Sea of Marmora to the Black Sea.

Strait of Kerch, or Yenikale, joining the Black Sea and the Sea of Azov.

The Sound, the Strait of Gibraltar, the Dardanelles, and the Hellespont of Constantinople, are the four most important of these straits: *the Sound*, because it forms the most frequented channel of entrance to the Baltic Sea: *the Strait of Gibraltar*, because it is the only entrance to the Mediterranean; the *Dardanelles* and the *Channel of Constantinople*, because they are the means of entrance to the Black Sea.¹

Capes.—The principal capes are:—Cape Nordkyn, North Cape, and the Naaze, in Norway; the Skaw, in Denmark; the Bay of Biscay and Finisterre, in Spain; Roca and St. Vincent, in Portugal; Trafalgar and Tarifa, in Spain; Di Leuca and Otranto, in Italy; Matapan, in Greece.

The most northerly point of the continent of Europe is Cape Nordkyn. Cape Nordkyn is on an island (Mageroe), and is 6' farther north. *The most easterly* point is Cape Roca, in Portugal, and *the most southerly*, Tarifa, in Spain.

Peninsulas.—Of the six chief peninsulas² of Europe, two are in the north, and four in the south.

These six peninsulas are—Norway and Sweden, which together form the Scandinavian Peninsula;³ Jutland, which forms a portion of Denmark; Spain and Portugal, or the Spanish Peninsula; Italy; the Morea, which is part of Greece; and lastly, the Crimea, which is a part of Asia. All these peninsulas are connected with the mainland by isthmuses, of which the most important are:—

The Isthmus of Corinth, joining the Morea to the mainland of Greece.

The Isthmus of Perekop, uniting the Crimea to the mainland of Asia.

The exact places of these and other geographical features must be found by the map of Europe. Without constant exercise upon the map, no real progress can be made in geographical knowledge. Frequent exercise upon the map, or outline maps, when once the positions have been learned upon the ordinary map, is an excellent mode of fixing both names and positions in the learner's mind, and cannot be practised too much.

It is a remarkable fact that all the larger peninsulas of Europe, except the Iberian, are turned towards the south.

Scandinavia was the ancient name of the countries lying on the western coast of the Baltic Sea.

Islands.—Europe has belonging to it a great number of islands, of which the following are the most important :—

(1) In the **Atlantic Ocean**, (naming them in order from north to south): Iceland, the Faroe Islands, the British Islands, the Channel Islands (off the coast of France), and the Azores or Western Islands.¹

(2) In the **Arctic Ocean** are Nova Zembla, Vaygatz, Kolgouev, Jan Mayen, and the Loffoden Islands.

(3) In the **Baltic Sea** are Zealand, Funen, and several of smaller size, which together form the Danish Archipelago; with Rugen, Bornholm, Oland, Gothland, Oesel, Dago, and the group of the Aland Islands.

(4) In the **Mediterranean** are Sicily, Sardinia, Corsica, Candia, and Cyprus,² which are all of large size. The smaller islands are Majorca, Minorca, and Iviza (which form together the Balearic Islands); Elbe; the Lipari Islands; Malta; the Ionian Islands; and the numerous islands of the Archipelago, among which Negropont, or Euboea, is the most considerable.

. The *British Islands* are the most important of the above. They include England, Wales, and Scotland, which together form the island of Great Britain, with *Ireland*, and a great number of smaller islands adjacent to the larger ones. *Great Britain* is the largest island in Europe. *Sicily* is the largest island in the Mediterranean.

Mountains.—Europe exhibits great variety of surface. The southern parts of it are mountainous; the middle and western parts are less elevated, but may be called hilly; the north-western peninsula (Norway and Sweden) also contains high mountains; but the whole of eastern Europe is a vast and nearly level plain, only diversified by very slight elevations.

The principal mountain-chains of Europe are as follow :—

The Alps, on the borders of Italy, France, Switzerland, and Germany; the *Apennines*, in Italy; the *Balkan Mountains*, in Turkey; *Mount Pindus*, in Greece; the *Pyrenees*, between France and Spain; the *Sierra Nevada*, in Spain; the *Carpathian Mountains*, in the Austrian Empire, between Hungary and Galicia; the *Mountains of Germany*, in Prussia, Bavaria, Saxony, Hanover, Baden, &c.; the *Mountains of France*, in the centre and east of France; the *Scandinavian Mountains*, in Norway and Sweden; the *Ural Mountains*, in Russia, on the east border of Europe; *Mount Caucasus*, in Russia, on the south-east border of Europe.

¹ The Azores lie a long way out in the ocean, 900 miles to the west of Portugal, hence too far to be shown upon the map.

² The island of Cyprus is reckoned to belong to Asia.

(1) The **Alps**¹ are the highest and most extensive among the mountain systems of Europe. They include a great number of snow-covered summits, amongst which is *Mont Blanc*,² 15,780 feet (or nearly three miles) in elevation, and the highest mountain in Europe.

(2) The **Apennines** branch off from the Alps, and extend through nearly the whole length of Italy.

(3) The **Balkan Mountains** extend from the Black Sea westward towards the Adriatic, through the north of Turkey.

(4) The **Pyrenees**, between France and Spain, are covered with perpetual snow in their higher portions.

(5) The **Sierra Nevada**, near the Mediterranean coast, are the highest mountains in the Spanish peninsula.

(6) The **Carpathians** form nearly a semicircle, 700 miles in length, enclosing Hungary.

(7) The **Scandinavian Mountains**, in the north-west of Europe, are very much less elevated than the Alps, but owing to their higher latitude, and the consequently colder climate, their higher portions are always covered with snow.

Volcanoes.—The principal volcanoes are, *Hekla*, in Iceland; *Etna*, in Sicily; *Vesuvius*, near Naples; and *Stromboli*, one of the Lipari Islands.

Plains.—All the east of Europe is a great lowland or plain, including nearly the whole of Russia, and part of Germany, Denmark, and Holland. This vast extent of level country is so much greater than is met with in any other part of Europe, that it may be called the *Great Plain*. The other plains are :—

(1) The *Plain of Hungary*, in the eastern part of the Austrian Empire.

(2) The *Plain of Roumania and Bulgaria*, to the north of Turkey.

(3) The *Plain of Lombardy*, in the north of Italy.

(4) The *Plain of Languedoc*, in the south of France.

(5) The *Plain of Bohemia*, in the north-west of Austria.

(6) The *Plain of Andalusia*, in southern Spain.

¹ All the higher portions of the Alps are covered with perpetual snow. The continual accumulation of the snow gives rise to *glaciers*, or vast rivers of ice and frozen snow, which descend with slow but constant motion the sloping sides of the mountains, and advance far into the valleys beneath.

² Mont Blanc is on the border-line of France and Italy.

Rivers.—The longest river of Europe is the *Volga*, which flows into the Caspian Sea. The second in length is the *Danube*, which discharges into the Black Sea. The river *Dnieper*, which also flows into the Black Sea, is third in order, and the *Don*, which runs into the Sea of Azov, comes fourth. These four rivers are all in the east of Europe. The longest river of Western Europe is the *Rhine*, which flows into the North Sea.

The principal rivers of Europe are named in the following list, in the order of the seas into which they flow :—

- (1) *Flowing directly into the Arctic Ocean* :—Petchora.
- (2) *Flowing into the White Sea* :—Mezen, Dvina, Onega.
- (3) *Flowing directly into the Atlantic* :—Glommen, Göta, Loire, Garonne, Minho, Douro, Tagus, Guadiana, Guadalquivir, Shannon.
- (4) *Flowing into the Baltic Sea* :—Oder, Vistula, Niemen, Dvina, Neva, Tornea, Dal.
- (5) *Flowing into the North Sea* :—Elbe, Weser, Rhine, Meuse or Maas, Scheldt, Thames, Trent, Ouse, [Humber,] Tay.
- (6) *Flowing into the English Channel* :—Seine.
- (7) *Flowing into the Bristol Channel* :—Severn.
- (8) *Flowing into the Mediterranean* :—Ebro, Rhone, Arno, Tiber, Po, Adige, Maritza.
- (9) *Flowing into the Black Sea* :—Danube, Dniester, Dnieper, Kouban.
- (10) *Flowing into the Sea of Azov* :—Don.
- (11) *Flowing into the Caspian Sea* :—Volga, Kouma.

Sources of European Rivers.—The following derive their waters from the *Alps* :—the Rhine, Rhone, Po, and Adige. The *Apennines* contain the sources of the Tiber and the Arno. The *mountains of Germany* give rise to the following :—the Danube, Elbe, and Weser. The three following have their sources among the *Carpathian Mountains* :—the Dniester, Oder, and Vistula. The *Pyrenees* contain the source of the Garonne. The other *mountain-chains and highlands of the Spanish peninsula* give rise to the Minho, Douro, Tagus, Guadiana, and Guadalquivir. The *mountains of Central France*, with the adjacent plains of that country, contain the sources of the Loire, Seine, and Meuse. The *Scandinavian Mountains* (Dovrefield, &c.) give rise to the Tornea, Lulea, Pitea, Umea, Indals, Dal, Glommen, and Göta. The river Ural rises in the *Ural Mountains*. The river Kouban rises in *Mount Caucasus*. The following rivers originate in the *great lowland plain of Europe* :—the Volga, Don, Dnieper, Southern Dvina, Niemen, Northern Dvina, and Petchora.

Lakes.—The principal lakes, with the countries in which they are situated, are :—Ladoga, Onega, Saima, Peipous, in *Russia*; Wener, Wetter, Maelar, in *Sweden*; Miösen, in *Norway*; Balaton, or Platten See, in *Hungary*; Geneva, Constance, Neufchatel, Lucerne, Zurich, in *Switzerland*; Garda, Maggiore, Como, in *Italy*; Windermere, in *England*; Lomond, in *Scotland*; Neagh, in *Ireland*.

(1) Lake *Ladoga* is the largest lake in Europe; it covers an area greater than that of the county of York. Lake *Onega* is second in magnitude; Lake *Wener* third.

(2) The *Caspian Sea*, which lies on the borders of Europe and Asia, is really a vast lake, without any outlet, and its waters are salt, like those of the open sea. Even small lakes, however, which, like the Caspian, have no outlet for their waters, are usually salt. But the water of lakes in general is sweet and fresh.¹

Climate.—Nearly the whole of Europe falls within the north temperate zone. This division of the globe is therefore free alike from the great extremes of heat and cold which belong to other regions. There are, notwithstanding, great differences between the temperatures experienced in various countries of Europe. There is a gradual diminution of heat in passing from south to north, from the shores of the Mediterranean to those of the Baltic, and from the coasts of the Baltic to those of the Arctic Ocean. The countries of southern Europe are hot, those of middle Europe moderately warm, its more northerly regions cool, and the extreme north intensely cold.

(1) The long days and short nights which distinguish the summer of high latitudes occasion an excessive degree of heat for a brief period, even on the shores of the polar sea. But this is contrasted by the length and severity of the winter within similar localities, when the sun is below the horizon for lengthened periods. *The extremes of heat and cold, at the opposite seasons of summer and winter, become, in fact, more strongly marked as we approach the polar circle.* Hence, in such

¹ The lakes situated in the south of Europe occur within mountainous tracts of country, and are hence surrounded by very varied scenery—often in the highest degree beautiful. Those that belong to northern Europe lie mostly in the neighbourhood of the Baltic Sea, and are generally within level regions.

countries as Norway, Lapland, Iceland, and the northern part of Russia, there is a short but very hot summer, and a long and intensely severe winter; while in lower latitudes, as in the countries of middle and southern Europe, the seasons of summer and winter present less strongly-marked contrasts.

(2) Another thing that strongly affects the climate of European countries is *the influence of the vast ocean which washes its western shores*. The countries of western Europe, bordering on the Atlantic, and under the influence of winds which blow from over its vast surface, enjoy greater uniformity of temperature than the countries of eastern Europe, which are so much further removed from the ocean. In other words, the countries of western Europe have cooler summers and milder winters than the countries towards the extreme east of the continent.

(3) A greater quantity of rain falls in the south of Europe than in its middle portions, and more in its middle latitudes than further north. Warm countries, in general, have more rain than cold countries. More rain falls also in the west of Europe than in the east—a consequence of its proximity to the Atlantic Ocean, the winds blowing from which are abundantly charged with moisture. Along the whole western side of Europe (including the British Islands) westerly winds are generally accompanied with rain, while easterly winds—blowing from over large tracts of land—are dry.

Natural Productions.—The natural productions of the earth form three great classes—*mineral, vegetable, and animal*.

1. To the first belong the different metals (gold, silver, copper, iron, &c.) and the various mineral substances, including coal, salt, the various earths, as well as marbles, building-stones, and slates.

2. The second class includes all the productions of the vegetable world, from the largest trees of the forest to flowers and plants of the minutest size, as mosses and lichens.

3. The third embraces the infinite varieties of animal life—the inhabitants of the land, sea, and air alike.

In the last division, the lowest place is occupied by the insect world: next in order come fishes, and then, successively, reptiles, birds, and the various land animals, the highest of all being man himself.

. Europe possesses, among its natural productions, a very large proportion of such minerals, plants, and animals as are most useful to man.¹

¹ Some of the plants and animals that are now abundant in Europe have been brought from other parts of the globe, but a large proportion are native to its soil.

In fact, no other part of the earth equals Europe in the abundant possession of what is most capable of supplying, with the due exercise of industry, the wants of civilised man.

Minerals.—Europe is characterised by the abundance of iron, copper, lead, zinc, and other useful ores, as well as by its valuable coal-fields. It is in Great Britain and Belgium that the abundant distribution of *iron* and *coal* is most strikingly evidenced.

Coal occurs in France, Germany, and some other countries of Europe, though much less plentifully than in Great Britain and Belgium. In most of the countries of continental Europe, wood serves as the chief fuel. *Iron* is most plentiful in Great Britain, and next so in Belgium, France, Russia, Sweden and Norway, and parts of Germany. *Tin*, a valuable metal, is almost confined to England, where it has been worked, from a very early age, in the county of Cornwall. It occurs, in smaller quantity, in the north-west of Spain. The precious metals—*gold* and *silver*—are only sparingly found in Europe—gold in Hungary and Russia; silver in Hungary, parts of Germany, and also in Norway and Spain. *Copper* occurs in Great Britain, Russia, &c. *Lead* in Great Britain, Spain, Austria, Germany, and France. *Zinc* is produced in Great Britain, Belgium, and Germany. *Platinum*, a valuable metal, is found in Russia, within the region of the Ural Mountains. *Quicksilver* is supplied by Spain, Austria, and Bavaria. *Salt* is an abundant produce of Russia, Austrian Poland, England, France, Spain, Portugal, and parts of Germany.

Vegetation.—The food-plants that are characteristic of temperate latitudes in general thrive in this division of the globe.

(1) *Wheat, barley, rye, oats*, are grown abundantly over the larger portion of Europe, and *maize* (or Indian corn) in the more southerly division of the continent.

(2) Among fruits, the *apple, pear, plum, cherry, currant*, and *gooseberry*, belong to the middle latitudes of Europe; the *vine* to its more southwardly regions; the *orange, lemon, citron*, and *fig* to the shores of the Mediterranean.

(3) Of trees, the countries lying to the south of the Alps and the Pyrenees are distinguished by the abundance of evergreens; while the forest-growth of middle and northern Europe is chiefly *deciduous*, embracing such trees as the *oak, ash, beech, elm, larch, willow, alder, maple, sycamore*, and the various *pin*es and *firs*.

• Deciduous trees are those which cast their leaves annually.

Animals.—The vast number of *domestic animals* that are reared in Europe—either as the food of man, or for various other uses—is the most striking feature in its zoology. Many of the *wild animals* which were once common to Europe have greatly diminished in number. The variety of *birds* is great, except in the extreme north, and it is throughout singularly free from venomous reptiles. *Fish* of nearly every variety abound in the seas and rivers; and of *insects*, the kinds that are annoying and hurtful to man are, happily, rare in this portion of the globe.

(1) The *sheep*, *ox*, *pig*, and *goat*—the *horse*, *ass*, and *dog*—abound in every part of Europe. The *reindeer* supplies to the inhabitants of the extreme north of Europe (Lapland) the place of other domestic quadrupeds.

(2) Among the wild animals are the *wild boar* and the *bear*, as well as the *wolf*, which were formerly common in the British Islands; the *wild ox*, in the forests of Russia; the *red-deer*, the *fallow-deer*, and others of the same tribe, in middle Europe; the *chamois* and the *ibex* (animals of the goat kind) in the Alps.

(3) The web-footed birds (*geese*, *ducks*, &c.) are most numerous in high latitudes. The *stork*, the *crane*, the *heron*, the *pelican*, the *spoon-bill*, and the *flamingo* belong to the west and the south of Europe. The *vulture* and *eagle* tribe are most numerous in the high mountain-region of the south—that is, the Alps and Pyrenees. The *owl* is found in nearly every part of the continent.

(4) *Lizards* are common in the countries that border on the Mediterranean, but are perfectly harmless. The *chameleon* occurs in Spain.

(5) The fisheries of the Mediterranean, Black, Baltic, and Caspian Seas are all highly valuable. The *tunny*, which is the largest of edible fish, is found in the Mediterranean. The seas that surround the British Islands contain a vast abundance of such fish as the *cod*, *herring*, *mackerel*, *turbot*, and *pilchard*, besides the *crab*, *lobster*, *prawn*, and many others. The *salmon* abounds in the rivers of northern and western Europe, as it also does in the Volga and other streams of eastern Russia.

(6) The most useful member of the insect tribe—the common *honey-bee*—is reared in most European countries. The *silk-worm* is numerous in the south of Europe—in Italy, Spain, Switzerland, and the south of France. The *scorpion* is found in the south of Europe.

Inhabitants.—The *population* of Europe amounts to upwards of 320 millions, or about a fourth part of the entire human race. This shows a much higher ratio of population, as compared to extent of surface, than belongs to either of the other divisions of the globe. The countries of western and southern Europe are its most populous portions; those in the east and north the least so.

(1) **Race.**—Nine-tenths of the people of Europe belong to what is called the white or Caucasian division of mankind, distinguished from other members of the human family by the comparative fairness of the skin and the varying colour of the hair and eyes. But there are many differences among the different nations of Europe—the people who dwell in the southerly portions of the continent being generally darker than the natives of more northwardly lands.

(2) **Language.**—The languages of Europe, with the exception of the Turkish and other kindred tongues, belong to four classes—the *Celtic* (which embraces the Welsh, Irish, and Gaelic languages); the *Teutonic* (English, German, Dutch, Swedish, and Norwegian); the *Romanic* (French, Spanish, Portuguese, Italian, and Greek); and the *Sclavonic* (Russian, Polish, &c.)

(3) **Religion.**—With the exception of the Turks and Jews, all the nations of Europe profess Christianity, in one or other of its three forms—the Protestant, Roman Catholic, or the Greek Church.

(4) **Education.**—All the great nations of Europe are more or less advanced in education, and there are numerous schools, colleges, and universities found in each country.

Government.—The government of every state in Europe, except France and Switzerland, is *monarchical* in form, and is *despotic* in Russia and Turkey, but *limited* in the United Kingdom and other countries. France and Switzerland (and the small states of San Marino and Andorra) are *republics*.

Divisions.—EUROPE is politically divided into eighteen independent countries, besides several small territories, which are hardly capable of recognition upon the general map of Europe—*e.g.*, San Marino (Italy), Monaco (France), Andorra (Spain), and several of the smaller principalities and duchies of Germany. The German Empire, of which Prussia is the head, includes as many as twenty-six distinct states.

The names of the principal European countries, with the form of government and capital city of each, are given in the following table :—

| Countries. | Government. | Capital. |
|------------------------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. Great Britain & Ireland | Kingdom. | London. |
| 2. France | Republic. | Paris. |
| 3. Belgium | Kingdom. | Brussels. |
| 4. Holland | Kingdom. | Amsterdam. |
| 5. Switzerland | Republic. | Berne. |
| 6. Germany | Empire. | Berlin. |
| 7. Austro-Hungary | Empire. | Vienna. |
| 8. Denmark | Kingdom. | Copenhagen. |
| 9. Norway and Sweden | Kingdom. | Stockholm. |
| 10. Russia in Europe | Empire. | St. Petersburg. |
| 11. Turkey | Empire. | Constantinople. |
| 12. Montenegro | Principality. | Cettinje. |
| 13. Servia | Principality. | Belgrade. |
| 14. Roumania | Kingdom. | Bucharest. |
| 15. Greece | Kingdom. | Athens. |
| 16. Italy | Kingdom. | Rome. |
| 17. Spain | Kingdom. | Madrid. |
| 18. Portugal | Kingdom. | Lisbon. |

The countries of Europe may be also arranged as follows, according to their "rank" or power :—

(1) Great Britain, Germany, France, Austria, and Russia. These constitute the "*five great powers*" of Europe.

(2) Italy, Norway and Sweden, Spain.

(3) Turkey, Belgium, Holland, Denmark, Portugal, Switzerland, and Greece.

GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND.

GREAT BRITAIN and IRELAND are the two largest of the British Islands, a group situated in the Atlantic Ocean, off the western side of the European continent. Great Britain includes *England, Wales, and Scotland*. *Ireland* lies to the west of Great Britain, and is divided from it by the Irish Sea. England and Wales are so intimately connected that it is convenient to describe them as one country.

1. ENGLAND AND WALES.

Boundaries.—ENGLAND is bounded on the *north* by Scotland: on the *south* by the English Channel: on the *east* by the North Sea or German Ocean: on the *west* by the Irish Sea, the Principality of Wales, and the Atlantic Ocean.

WALES is enclosed on three sides—the north, west, and south—by the Irish Sea, St. George's Channel, and the Bristol Channel; to the eastward it adjoins England.

England is divided from—

- (1) *Scotland* by the Tweed, Cheviot Hills, and the Solway Firth.
- (2) *Ireland* by the Irish Sea and St. George's Channel.
- (3) *France* by the English Channel and Strait of Dover.
- (4) *Belgium, Holland, and Germany* by the North Sea.

Extent.—England and Wales are but a small country, equal in magnitude to scarcely more than a nine-hundredth part of the lands upon the earth's surface. England embraces an area of 50,923 square miles, and Wales, 7,397. Total area, 58,320 square miles.

The *greatest length*, from Berwick to the Lizard, is 423 miles; the *greatest breadth*, from Lowestoft Ness to Land's End, is 364 miles.

Coasts.—The *western* coasts of England are more irregular and elevated, and exhibit a greater number of capes and inlets, than either the *southern* or the *eastern* coasts.

1. **Capes.**¹—*On the east*, Flamborough Head, Spurn Head, Lowestoft Ness, the Naze, and the North Foreland. *On the south*, the South Foreland, Dungeness, Beachy Head, Selsea Bill, St. Catherine's Point, St. Alban's Head, Portland Bill, Berry Head, Bolt Head, and the Lizard. *On the west*, the Land's End, Hartland Point, Worms Head, St. David's Head, Great Orme's Head, Point of Aire, Formby Point, and St Bees Head.

. *Lowestoft Ness* is the most easterly point of England. The *Lizard* is the most southerly, and *Land's End* the most westerly point.

2. **Inlets.**—*On the east*, the Humber, the Wash, and the mouth of the Thames. *On the south*, Portsmouth Harbour, Southampton Water, Weymouth Bay, Tor Bay, Plymouth Sound, Falmouth Harbour, and Mount's Bay. *On the west*, the Solway Firth, Morecambe Bay, Cardigan Bay, and the Bristol Channel, which last includes Carmarthen Bay, Swansea Bay, and Barnstaple Bay.

(1) The *Humber* is the estuary² of the *Ouse* and *Trent*.

(2) The *Wash* receives the drainage of the "Fens."

(3) *Plymouth Sound* is protected by an artificial breakwater a mile long.

(4) In the *Bristol Channel* the tide advances rapidly, and rises at Chepstow to a height of 45 feet.

(5) *Milford Haven* is the finest natural harbour in England.

(6) *Solway Firth* is noted for its valuable salmon fisheries.

3. **Straits and Roadsteads.**—*On the east*, Yarmouth Roads,³ the Downs, Strait of Dover. *On the south*, Spithead, Solent, and Portland Roads. *On the west*, the Menai Straits.

The *Downs* are between the Goodwin Sands and the coast of Kent. *Spithead* and *Solent* separate the Isle of Wight from the mainland. The *Menai Straits* are between Anglesey and Carnarvonshire.

¹ From the *South Foreland* the French coast may be seen. *Beachy Head* is the loftiest headland on the south coast. *Great Orme's Head* is by far the loftiest headland in England and Wales, being 678 feet high.

² An estuary is a narrow arm of the sea, such as is often formed at the mouth of a river. The word estuary is from the Latin *æstuarium*.

³ By a roadstead, or road, is meant a natural "harbour of refuge" where vessels may ride at anchor safely.

4. Islands.—The principal islands are : Holy Island, Coquet, Fern Islands, Sheppey, Thanet, Wight, Scilly Isles, Lundy, Anglesey, Holyhead, Bardsey, Isle of Man, and Walney.

Anglesey is separated from the mainland by the Menai Straits. The *Isle of Wight*, the "garden of England," is extremely beautiful and fertile. The *Scilly Isles*, 30 miles south-west of Land's End, are 145 in number, of which 6 only are inhabited. The *Isle of Man* is situated in the Irish Sea, nearly midway between England, Scotland, and Ireland. The *Channel Islands*, off the coast of Normandy, also belong to England.

Natural Features.—The surface of England exhibits, in general, a succession of gentle slopes or undulations, which rise in some places into hills. Wales is chiefly mountainous. Both England and Wales are well watered by numerous streams. There are only a few lakes—all of them of small size.

The natural features of England and Wales are best described under four heads—(1) Mountains, (2) Plains, (3) Rivers, (4) Lakes.

1. Mountains.—The high grounds of England and Wales lie principally upon the western side of the island. They include (taking them from north to south) the Pennine Range, the Cumbrian Mountains, the Welsh Mountains, and the high grounds of Cornwall and Devon.

(1) The **Pennine Range** extends from the Cheviot Hills (on the borders of England and Scotland) to the district of the Peak, in Derbyshire, lying nearly along the line of division between the six northern counties of England. The highest point is *Crossfell* (2,892 feet), in the county of Cumberland.

(2) The **Cumbrian Mountains** are a group in the counties of Cumberland, Westmoreland, and northern Lancashire, near the coast of the Irish Sea. They contain the highest elevation in England—*Scaw Fell*, 3,208 feet above the level of the sea. *Skiddaw* and *Helvellyn*, in the same group, are nearly as high.

(3) The **Welsh Mountains** spread over the greater part of Wales, and reach a greater elevation than any of the English mountains. *Snowdon*, in the county of Caernarvon, 3,570 feet, is the highest among them. *Cader Idris*, *Plinlimmon*, the *Beacons of Brecknock*, and many others, are lofty and well-known points.

(4) The **Hills of Cornwall and Devon** are less elevated, but impart a varied and often rugged surface to the south-west corner of the island.

Dartmoor, in Devonshire, reaches 2,050 feet above the sea. *Brown Willy*, in Cornwall, is 1,364 feet.

To the eastward of the above tracts the elevations are much less conspicuous; few points reach more than a thousand feet above the sea-level, and most of them are considerably below that altitude. The following are the most important among these lower heights:—

| Name. | Position. | Name. | Position. |
|------------------|---------------|------------------------------|---------------|
| North York Moors | Yorkshire. | Cotswold Hills | Gloucester. |
| Wolds . | Yorkshire and | Mendip Hills | Somerset. |
| | Lincolnshire. | Quantock Hills | Do. |
| Chiltern Hills | Buckingham | Blackdown Hills | Do. |
| | and Oxford. | Exmoor | Somerset and |
| Clee Hills . | Shropshire. | | Devon. |
| The Wrekin . | do. | Salisbury Plain ¹ | Wiltshire. |
| Malvern Hills | Worcester and | North Downs | Kent & Surrey |
| | Hereford. | | Sussex and |
| Clent Hills . | Worcester. | South Downs | Hampshire. |

2. Plains.—The most extensive plains and valleys in England are the following:—the York Plain, the Cumbrian and Cheshire Plains, the Central Plain, the district of the Fens, the Eastern Plain, the Valley of the Severn, and the Valley of the Thames.

The *York Plain*, between the Pennine Range and the Wolds, is the most extensive in England. The *Cumbrian* and *Cheshire Plains* lie to the north and south of the Cumbrian group, on the west side of the Pennine Range. The *Central Plain* extends from the Thames on the south to the Ouse on the north, and the Severn on the west to the Trent on the east. The *Fens* lie round the shores of the Wash (including parts of the counties of Lincoln, Northampton, Huntingdon, Cambridge, Norfolk, and Suffolk), and forms the lowest and most perfectly level portion of the island.² The *Eastern Plain* includes the sea-board of Essex, Suffolk, and Norfolk.

3. Rivers.—As the high grounds of England and Wales lie chiefly on the western coast, the longest rivers are, with one exception, on the eastern side, and flow into the German Ocean.

The following is a list of the principal rivers:—

¹ On this plain, about eight miles from Salisbury, is *Stonehenge*, a Druidical or Danish Circle.

² The coast is in some parts protected from inundation by *dykes*, as in *Holland*.

1. On the east, flowing into the **German Ocean** from the
 - (1) *Pennine Range*: the Tyne, Wear, Tees, Ouse, and Trent.
 - (2) *Water-shed of the Central Plain*: Witham, Welland, Nen, Ouse, all entering the Wash.
 - (3) *East Anglian Heights*: Yare, Orwell, Stour (Essex), Colne, and Blackwater.
 - (4) *Cotswold and other hills*: the Thames and its tributaries.
 - (5) *Wealden Heights*: Stour (Kent).
2. On the south, flowing into the **English Channel** from
 - (1) *Wealden Heights*: Rother and Ouse (Sussex).
 - (2) *The Downs* of Hants and Wilts: Itchen, Test, and Avon.¹
 - (3) *Devonian Range*: Stour, Froom, Axe, Otter, Exe, Teign, Dart, Tamar and Fal.
3. On the west, flowing into the **Bristol Channel** from the
 - (1) *Devonian Range*: Torridge, Tawe, and Parret.
 - (2) *Cotswold Hills*: Avon (Bristol).
 - (3) *Welsh Mountains*: Severn, Wye, Usk, Taff, Neath, Tawe, and Towy.
4. On the west, flowing into the **Irish Sea** from the
 - (1) *Welsh Mountains*: Teify, Dyfi, Conway, Clwyd, Dee.
 - (2) *Pennine Range*: Mersey, Ribble, Wyre, Lune, Eden.
 - (3) *Cumbrian Group*: Kent, Derwent.

. Of the above the most important are the Thames, Severn, Trent, Ouse, and Mersey.

The **Thames** is the most important river in the British Islands, since it has London, the metropolis of the British empire, upon its banks. The Thames rises near the eastern foot of the Cotswold Hills, and has a course of 215 miles to the sea, a greater length than any other river in the island.

The **Severn** rises on the east side of Plinlimmon, and enters the Bristol Channel after a course of 200 miles.

The **Trent** rises in the moorlands of Staffordshire, and falls into the Humber after a course of 180 miles.

The **Ouse**, sometimes distinguished as the Yorkshire Ouse, is formed by the junction of the *Swale* and the *Yore*, and flows into the Humber after a course of 150 miles.

The **Mersey** is but a small river (68 miles in length), but its estuary forms the "Liverpool Channel," one of the most important harbours in the world.

4. **Lakes**.—There are few lakes in England, and they are nearly all situated within the region of the Cumbrian Mountains. The largest are *Windermere*, *Ulleswater*, *Coniston*,

¹ In the language of the Celts, the ancient inhabitants of Britain, the word *Avon* signified a running stream.

Derwent Water, Basenthwaite, Crummock, and Wastwater. In Wales are *Bala Lake*, the *Lakes of Llanberis, Llyn Conway, and Brecknock-mere.*

Windermere, the largest lake in England, is about 10½ miles long, and a mile broad. *Bala Lake*, the largest in Wales, is 4 miles long, and a little more than half-a-mile broad. Windermere is drained by the river Leven; Bala Lake, by the Dee.

Climate.—The climate of England is temperate and healthy—more moderate, both in regard to heat and cold, than that of countries on the neighbouring continent. Rain is abundant, more so on the western side of the island than elsewhere, owing to its position with regard to the Atlantic Ocean.

Productions.—The natural productions of England are numerous and important.

1. The general cultivation of the land has greatly diminished the size of the forests, with which large portions of England were formerly covered, while many of the wild animals which its woods once sheltered are long since extinct.

The grains, fruits, and vegetables, the domestic cattle and various farmyard stock, are familiar even to the youngest learner, and need not therefore be enumerated.

2. The mineral produce of England and Wales is exceedingly rich. *Coal and iron*, with *copper, lead, zinc, tin*, and other valuable ores—all of the highest utility to civilised man—occur plentifully in different parts of the country, and are largely worked. In the value of its coal-fields and iron-works, Britain surpasses any other country on the globe.

(1) The **coal-fields** of England occur chiefly in the northern and mid-land counties, and yield an inexhaustible supply of that fuel. South Wales also includes a rich and extensive coal-field.

(2) **Iron-ore** occurs abundantly within the limits of nearly all the coal districts, and is most extensively worked in South Wales, together with the counties of Stafford, Shropshire, Yorkshire, Derbyshire, Durham, and Northumberland.

(3) **Lead** is principally worked in Derbyshire, Northumberland, Cumberland, North and South Wales, and Devonshire.

(4) **Copper and tin** belong chiefly (the latter entirely) to the counties of Cornwall and Devon.

(5) **Cheshire** furnishes an abundant supply of **salt** from the brine-springs and mines in the valley of the river Weaver, which joins the Mersey.

(6) **Good marbles and building-stones** are derived from the northern and north-midland districts of the country, as well as from its south-western peninsula.

(7) **Slate** is extensively quarried in Wales and in the mountain-region of Cumberland and Westmoreland.

Inhabitants.—In 1881 England and Wales contained 25,968,286 inhabitants—that is, an average of 445 persons to the square mile. So that, in the proportion of inhabitants to extent of surface, England is more populous than any other country of Europe, with the exception of Belgium.

Race and Language.—The people of England belong to the *Teutonic* race; the people of Wales are of *Celtic* origin. The languages spoken also differ—that of the Welsh being Celtic, while the English language is mainly derived from the Anglo-Saxon, but with some thousands of words of Latin and Greek origin.

Industry.—England ranks first among the nations of the world in regard to *manufactures* and *commerce*. *Agriculture* is also well attended to; but the supply of agricultural produce is not equal to the demand, and immense quantities of food-stuffs are therefore imported from other lands.

1. Agriculture.—The agricultural districts of England are found chiefly in the east and south: the manufacturing districts belong to the northern, north-midland, and western counties.

Wheat, oats, barley, and rye, are the grains most largely grown: wheat most extensively in the south-eastern counties; barley in the eastern and midland counties; oats within the district of the Fens and in the north. *Hops* are cultivated chiefly in Kent and Surrey, and in the counties of Worcester and Hereford. The *potato* is very largely grown in Lancashire, Cumberland, and Cheshire; the *turnip* chiefly in Norfolk. *Rape* is much cultivated in Lincolnshire and Cambridgeshire; *hemp* and *flax* in the counties of Lincoln and Suffolk. Hereford and Devon are distinguished for the extensive culture of the *apple*, from which cider is largely made.

2. **Manufactures.**—Cotton, wool, and iron,¹ are the three great staples of the manufacturing industry of Britain. The *first*, which is a vegetable material—the pod of the cotton-plant—is derived chiefly from the United States of America. The *second*, which belongs to the animal kingdom, is furnished by the fleeces of the sheep reared upon our plains and downs, together with a large quantity imported from other lands—principally Australia. The *third*, a mineral ore, is supplied in exhaustless abundance by the English soil.

The southern division of Lancashire, and the adjoining part of Cheshire, are the great seat of the *cotton* manufacture, which employs a much larger number of artisans than any other single branch of British industry. Manchester is the centre and capital of the cotton manufacture, and Liverpool is its port. The West Riding of Yorkshire is the chief seat of the *woollen* manufacture, and the towns of Leeds and Bradford are its principal centres of industry. The south part of Staffordshire, and the adjacent portions of Warwick, Worcester, and Shropshire, are the chief seat of the manufacture of *iron* and *hardware* goods, and the town of Birmingham is the manufacturing capital of the district. Sheffield, in Yorkshire, is the chief seat of one branch of the *hardware* trade—the making of cutlery.

3. **Commerce.**—The foreign commerce of England extends to every part of the globe; her ships traverse every sea, and her flag is seen in the harbours of every land. The *import* of raw materials, and the *export* of manufactured goods, are the distinguishing features of English commerce.

(1) **Imports.**—*Sugar, coffee, spices*, and other productions of tropical regions, foreign to the English soil, are imported from the East and West Indies; *tea* from China and British India; *tobacco* from the United States and elsewhere; *timber* from Canada and the countries lying round the Baltic Sea; *wines* and *spirits* from France, Spain, and Portugal; *hides, skins*, and *tallow* from South America, the Cape of Good Hope, and Russia; *raw cotton* from the United States, Egypt, and other countries;

¹ Other manufactures are carried on extensively in England, but none upon a scale of such magnitude as the three above named. The *silk* and *linen* manufactures, the making of *hosiery* and *lace*, the *leather* manufacture, those of *earthenware* and *glass*, of *watches* and *clocks*, of *paper*, and a vast variety of others, are all of importance. The making of earthenware, on an extensive scale, is almost peculiar to a district in the north of Staffordshire, which is hence called "the Potteries."

wool from Australia, South Africa, &c. ; *corn* and *flour* from the United States, Russia, &c.

(2) **Exports.**—The most important articles exported are manufactured cotton, woollen, linen, and silk goods, iron and steel, earthenware, tin, machinery, stationery and books, and coal. The countries to which the largest quantities of British manufactures and other produce are exported are:—North America, Australia, the East Indies, Germany, Holland, France, &c.

(3) **Ports.**—The principal ports are:—Liverpool, London, Bristol, Hull, Southampton, Newcastle, Plymouth, Whitehaven, Sunderland, Falmouth, Swansea, Cardiff, Grimsby, Stockton, and Barrow-in-Furness.

Counties and Towns.—England and Wales are divided into fifty-two counties : England contains forty of the number, and Wales twelve. The counties are very unequal in point of size. Rutland is the smallest county in England, and Yorkshire the largest. Lincoln, Devon, and Norfolk, come next to Yorkshire in order of size.

The town which is the principal place of election for the county members, or, in some cases that in which the assizes are held, is the *county town*.¹ This ranks as the capital of the county, though it does not always coincide with the largest town which the county may contain.

The English counties are divided, with reference to relative situation, into six northern, six western, five eastern, nine southern, and fourteen midland counties.

(a) **Six Northern Counties.**—The *six northern counties* are Northumberland, Durham, Yorkshire, Cumberland, Westmoreland, and Lancashire. The first three border on the German Ocean, the other three are on the western side of the island, adjacent to the Irish Sea.

Northumberland has for its county town *Newcastle-upon-Tyne*, the great seat of the coal trade. Its other towns are North Shields, Tynemouth, Berwick, Alnwick, Morpeth, and Hexham. Berwick is at the mouth of the river Tweed, close to the Scotch border. The battle of Flodden (1513) was fought in this county, near the east foot of the Cheviot Hills.

Durham—chief towns:—*Durham* (a cathedral city on the river Wear), Sunderland, Stockton, Hartlepool, and South Shields. Sunderland is at the mouth of the river Wear ; Stockton is on the Tees.

¹ The county towns are distinguished by *italic* letters.

Yorkshire is divided into three *ridings*—the North, East, and West ridings. The last named is the most populous, and includes nearly all the larger towns. The capital of the county is *York*, an archiepiscopal city on the Ouse. Among the numerous other towns are Leeds, Bradford, Sheffield, Huddersfield, Halifax, Wakefield, Barnsley, Dewsbury, Doncaster, and Ripon—all of them in the West Riding. Leeds (on the river Aire) and Bradford, are the largest seats of the woollen manufacture. Sheffield (at the junction of the little river Sheaf with the Don) is noted for its cutlery. Ripon, on the Ure (or Yore), an affluent of the Yorkshire Ouse, is a cathedral city.

The towns in the East Riding of Yorkshire are Hull, Beverley, and Bridlington. Those in the North Riding are Scarborough, Whitby, Malton, Richmond, and Northallerton. Hull is an important seaport on the north bank of the Humber estuary.

The battle of Marston Moor, gained by the Parliamentary forces over the army of Charles I., in 1644, was fought in this county, a few miles west of York, as also were those of Wakefield and Towton (1460 and 1461), during the wars of the Roses.

Cumberland contains *Carlisle* (a cathedral city on the river Eden), Whitehaven, Workington, Maryport, Cockermouth, Penrith, and Keswick. Whitehaven has valuable coal mines. Keswick is in the heart of the Lake district.

Westmoreland—chief towns, *Appleby* and Kendal. The latter is on the river Kent, which flows into Morecambe Bay.

Lancashire has for its capital the town of *Lancaster*, on the river Lune, but the two largest towns are Liverpool and Manchester, the great seats of the cotton trade. Liverpool is at the mouth of the Mersey. Manchester is on the river Irwell, which joins the Mersey. Both Liverpool and Manchester are cathedral cities.

The other towns are Preston, Bolton, Oldham, Blackburn, Wigan, Rochdale, Ashton-under-Lyne, Staley-bridge, Warrington, and Ulverston.

(b) **Six Western Counties.**—The *six western counties* are Cheshire, Shropshire, Herefordshire, Monmouthshire, Gloucestershire, and Somerset. The four first-mentioned of the number adjoin the Welsh border.

Cheshire has for its capital the cathedral city of *Chester*, on the river Dee. The other towns are Stockport, Macclesfield, Birkenhead, Nantwich, Middlewich, and Northwich—the three last named famous for their salt works

Shropshire—chief towns:—*Shrewsbury* (on the river Severn), Bridge-north, Wellington, Ludlow, and Oswestry. The hill called the Wrekin is a few miles east of Shrewsbury.

Herefordshire has the cathedral city of *Hereford* (on the river Wye) for its capital, and contains, besides, the towns of Leominster, Ledbury, and Ross.

Monmouthshire—chief towns:—*Monmouth* (at the junction of the river Munnow with the Wye), Newport, Abergavenny, Pontypool, and Chepstow. Newport is at the mouth of the river Usk, Chepstow at the mouth of the Wye.

Gloucestershire—chief towns:—*Gloucester* (on the Severn), Cheltenham, Stroud, Cirencester, and Tewkesbury. Bristol, on the Lower Avon, is partly in this county, and partly in Somerset. Both Gloucester and Bristol are cathedral cities. Bristol, although several miles above the sea, is an important and flourishing port.

Somersetshire—chief towns:—Bath, Wells, *Taunton*, Frome, Bridgewater, and Yeovil. Bath, situated on the river Avon, and Wells, at the foot of the Mendip Hills, are both cathedral cities. Athelney, Alfred the Great's temporary place of concealment from the Danes, was in this county, near the junction of the rivers Tone and Parret. Sedgemoor, the scene of James II.'s victory over Monmouth—the last battle fought on English ground—is also in Somersetshire.

(c) **Five Eastern Counties.**—The *five eastern counties* are Lincoln, Cambridge, Norfolk, Suffolk, and Essex. All of them, except Cambridge, are washed by the waters of the German Ocean.

Lincolnshire has for its capital *Lincoln*, an ancient cathedral city on the river Witham. Its other towns are Boston, Grimsby, Gainsborough, Stamford, and Louth. Boston and Grimsby are flourishing ports.

Cambridgeshire—chief towns:—*Cambridge*, Wisbeach, Ely, and Newmarket. Cambridge, on the river Cam, is famous for its ancient university. Ely, on the Ouse, is a cathedral city.

Norfolk has for its capital the cathedral city of *Norwich*, situated on the river Wensum, which joins the Yare. Of its other towns, the principal are Yarmouth and King's Lynn.

Suffolk—chief towns:—*Ipswich* (on the river Orwell), Bury St. Edmunds, Lowestoft, and Sudbury. Lowestoft is situated at the easternmost extremity of Britain.

Essex—chief towns:—*Chelmsford* (on the river Chelmer), Colchester, Harwich, and Saffron-Walden. Harwich is a port at the mouth of the river Stour.

(d) **Nine Southern Counties.**—The *nine southern counties* are Kent, Surrey, Sussex, Berkshire, Hampshire, Wiltshire, Dorsetshire, Devon, and Cornwall. They stretch (with the exception of Surrey, Berkshire, and Wiltshire, which are inland) along the shore of the English Channel, from the North and South Forelands on the east, to the Land's End on the west.

Kent—chief towns :—*Maidstone* (on the river Medway), Canterbury, Chatham, Rochester, Woolwich, Dover, Folkestone, Gravesend, Sheerness, Margate, and Ramsgate.

Canterbury, on the river Stour, is an ancient cathedral city, the ecclesiastical metropolis of England. Rochester, on the Medway (adjoining Chatham), is also a cathedral city. Dover is a seaport situated at the point where England makes nearest approach to the French coast, which is only 21 miles distant. Both Ramsgate and Margate are on the Isle of Thanet. Sheerness is on the Isle of Sheppey.

Surrey includes the south part of London. The county-town is *Guildford*, on the river Wey. The other towns are Croydon, Richmond, Kingston, and Epsom. Runnymede, where *Magna Charta* was signed by King John in 1215, is within the north-western border of this county, upon the south bank of the Thames.

Sussex—chief towns :—*Leves*, Brighton, Hastings, Chichester, and Worthing. The battle of Hastings, between the armies of William the Conqueror and Harold, A.D. 1066, was fought a few miles to the north-west of Hastings, where the small town of Battle now stands. Chichester is a cathedral city.

Berkshire—chief towns :—*Reading*, Windsor, Abingdon, Maidenhead, Newbury, and Wantage. Two battles were fought at Newbury, during the Civil War, in 1643 and 1644.

Hampshire—chief towns :—*Winchester*, Portsmouth, and Southampton. Winchester is an ancient cathedral city, the former capital of the West Saxon kings. Portsmouth and Southampton are important seaports.

The Isle of Wight belongs (excepting for parliamentary purposes) to Hampshire. It contains the towns of Newport, Ryde, Cowes, and Ventnor.

Wiltshire has for its capital the cathedral city of *Salisbury*, on the river Avon. Its other towns are Devizes, Bradford, Trowbridge, Warminster, and Marlborough. Stonehenge, an ancient Druidical or Danish circle, is in this county.

Dorsetshire—chief towns, *Dorchester*, Weymouth, Poole, and Bridport.

Devonshire—chief towns :—*Exeter*, Plymouth, Barnstaple, Bideford, Tiverton, Tavistock, Dartmouth, Teignmouth, and Torquay.

Exeter is a cathedral city on the river Exe. Plymouth (with the adjoining town of Devonport) is a flourishing port, on the estuary of Plymouth Sound.

Cornwall—chief towns :—*Bodmin*, Truro, Penzance, Falmouth, St. Austell, and Launceston. This county is famous for its tin and copper mines. The Scilly Islands, at the entrance of the English Channel, belong to Cornwall.

(e) **Fourteen Midland Counties**.—The *fourteen midland counties* are Stafford, Derby, Nottingham, Leicester, Warwick, Worcester, Oxford, Buckingham, Middlesex, Hertford, Bedford, Huntingdon, Northampton, and Rutland. The first six are sometimes distinguished as the *north-midland* district, and the remainder as the *south-midland*. Middlesex is termed the metropolitan county, since it contains London, the capital of the British Empire.

Staffordshire—chief towns :—*Stafford*, Wolverhampton, West Bromwich, Walsall, Bilston, Wednesbury, Stoke-upon-Trent, Lichfield, and Tamworth. Lichfield is a cathedral city. The south part of this county abounds in coal-pits and iron works ; the north part includes the tract known as the Potteries, from the extensive manufacture of earthenware carried on there. The battle of Blore Heath was fought 11 miles north-west of Stafford.

Derbyshire—chief towns :—*Derby* (on the river Derwent, an affluent of the Trent), Chesterfield, Wirksworth, Ashbourne, Buxton, and Matlock. Derbyshire includes the romantic district of the Peak. Matlock and Buxton are noted for their mineral waters.

Nottinghamshire—chief towns :—*Nottingham*, (noted for its cotton-stocking and lace manufactures), Newark, Mansfield, and Worksop. Both Nottingham and Newark are on the river Trent.

Leicestershire has for its capital *Leicester*, on the river Soar (an affluent of the Trent), distinguished for its manufacture of woollen stockings. The other towns are Ashby-de-la-Zouch, Loughborough, Hinckley, and Melton Mowbray. Bosworth, the scene of the battle in which Richard III. lost his life, is in this county.

Warwickshire—chief towns :—*Warwick*, Birmingham, Coventry, Rugby, and Stratford-upon-Avon. Warwick (as well as Stratford, the birthplace of Shakespeare) is on the river Avon. Coventry is noted for its manufacture of ribbons. Birmingham is the centre of the hardware manufacture. The battle of Edgehill (1642) was fought in this county, near the Oxfordshire border.

Worcestershire has for its chief town the cathedral city of *Worcester*, on the river Severn. The other towns are Kidderminster, Dudley, Stourbridge, Stourport, and Evesham. Worcester is noted for its porcelain and glass works; and Kidderminster has large carpet manufactories.

Oxfordshire contains the cathedral city of *Oxford*, seated at the junction of the Cherwell and the Thames, and famous for its university. It includes also the towns of Banbury, Witney, Henley, and Woodstock.

Buckinghamshire contains the towns of Buckingham (on the river Ouse), *Aylesbury*, Great Marlow, and Wycombe.

Middlesex contains the chief part of London, and also the small towns of *Brentford*, *Uxbridge*, and *Staines*. LONDON, the capital of the British empire, is situated on the river Thames, and contains, with its suburbs, nearly three and three-quarter millions of inhabitants. Besides the City, properly so called, London includes Westminster (formerly a separate place, and still preserving the privileges of a distinct city), and Southwark, with other extensive outlying districts. Southwark is upon the southern side of the Thames, and within the county of Surrey. London contains the cathedral church of St. Paul's, and constitutes a bishop's see. Besides its rank as the capital of the kingdom, London is a great manufacturing and commercial city, and a centre of arts, literature, general refinement, and wealth.

Hertfordshire contains the towns of *Hertford*, Ware, St. Albans, Hitchin, and Barnet. Hertford and Ware are on the river Lea. St. Albans was the scene of two of the battles fought during the wars of the Roses (1455 and 1461). Barnet, which lies on the border of Hertford and Middlesex, was the scene of a later engagement, belonging to the same period of history, in which the famous Earl of Warwick was slain, 1471.

Bedfordshire—chief towns:—*Bedford* (on the river Ouse), Luton, Dunstable, and Woburn. Bedford is noted as being the place where John Bunyan wrote his great work, the *Pilgrim's Progress*.

Huntingdonshire—chief towns:—*Huntingdon* (on the Ouse), St. Ives, and St. Neots. Huntingdon was the birthplace of Oliver Cromwell.

Northamptonshire—chief towns:—*Northampton*, Peterborough, Wellingborough, and Daventry. Northampton and Peterborough are both on the river Nen. Northampton has large manufactories of boots and shoes. Peterborough is a cathedral city. Naseby, the scene of Cromwell's victory over Charles I., in 1645, is in this county, 12 miles north-west of Northampton. A battle was fought near the town of Northampton in 1460, during the wars of the Roses.

Rutlandshire—chief towns:—*Oakham*, and Uppingham.

WALES.—Six of the counties are in North Wales, and six in South Wales. The six counties of North Wales are Anglesea, Carnarvon, Denbigh, Flint, Merioneth, and Montgomery. The six counties of South Wales are Cardigan, Radnor, Brecknock, Glamorgan, Carmarthen, and Pembroke.

The counties of Flint, Denbigh, and Anglesea, in North Wales, with Glamorgan and Carmarthen, in South Wales, possess coal and iron mines, and Glamorgan has considerable trade. But the greater part of Wales is pastoral.

The chief towns in each of the Welsh counties are named below, the county town being distinguished by *italics*.—

| Counties. | Towns. |
|-------------------|---|
| Anglesea . . . | Holyhead, <i>Beaumaris</i> . |
| Carnarvonshire . | <i>Carnarvon</i> , Bangor, Conway. |
| Denbighshire . | Denbigh, Wrexham, <i>Ruthin</i> . |
| Flintshire . . . | Holywell, <i>Mold</i> , Flint, St. Asaph. |
| Merionethshire . | <i>Dolgelly</i> , Bala. |
| Montgomeryshire | Newtown, Welshpool, <i>Montgomery</i> . |
| Cardiganshire . | Aberystwith, <i>Cardigan</i> . |
| Radnorshire . . | New Radnor, <i>Presteign</i> , Knighton. |
| Brecknockshire . | <i>Brecknock</i> , Hay, Builth. |
| Glamorganshire . | Merthyr-Tydvil, Swansea, <i>Cardiff</i> , Neath, Llandaff. |
| Carmarthenshire . | <i>Carmarthen</i> , Llanelli, Llandeilo. |
| Pembrokeshire . | Pembroke, <i>Haverfordwest</i> , Tenby, Milford, St. David's. |

Merthyr-Tydvil, which is within the South Wales coal-field, and forms the centre of coal and iron works upon a scale of great magnitude, is the largest town in Wales. *Swansea* and *Cardiff* are next in size, and are the chief ports of the coal and iron district. *Milford*, in Pembrokeshire, stands on the shore of Milford Haven, a magnificent natural harbour. *Holyhead* is on a small islet (Holy Island) which nearly adjoins the coast of Anglesea. The channel which separates the Isle of Anglesea from the mainland is called the Menai Strait.

The Isle of **Man** forms a dependency of the English Crown, but is not included within any of the counties. *Douglas* is the capital, and the largest and most important town in the island. *Castletown*, a very ancient town, was formerly the capital.

The Channel Islands also are a dependency of Great Britain, and consist of Jersey (capital, *St. Helier*), Guernsey (capital, *St. Pierre*), Alderney, and Sark.

II. SCOTLAND.

Scotland is divided from England by the Cheviot Hills, the Solway Firth, and the lower course of the river Tweed.

Boundaries.—Scotland is bounded on the *north* and *west* by the Atlantic Ocean ; on the *south* by England ; and on the *east* by the North Sea.

Extent.—Its area (inclusive of its numerous islands) is about 30,000 square English miles.¹ The mainland alone has an area of 26,000 square miles.

The *greatest length* from north to south is 280 miles ; the *greatest breadth* from east to west is 175 miles.²

Coasts.—The coasts of Scotland are more irregular than those of England, especially on the west and south.³ The broader inlets are generally known as *firths*, the narrow inlets bear the name of *lochs*.

1. **Capes.**—The principal are : Dunnet Head, the most *northerly* point ; the Mull of Galloway, the most *southerly* ; Buchan Ness, the most *easterly* ; Ardnamurchan Point, the most *westerly*. Besides these we have :—Cape Wrath, on the *north* ; Duncansby Head, Fife Ness, and St. Abb's Head, on the *east* ; the Mull of Cantire, on the *west*.

2. **Inlets.**—The principal inlets are :—the Firth of Forth, Firth of Tay, Moray Firth, and Cromarty Firth, on the *east* ; Dunnet Bay, on the *north* ; Loch Linnhe, Loch Fyne, the Firth of Clyde, on the *west* ; and the Solway Firth, on the *south*.

3. **Channels.**—The principal are : *Pentland Firth*, between the Orkneys and the mainland ; *North Minch*, between Lewis and the mainland ; *Little Minch*, between Hebrides and Skye ; *North Channel*, between Scotland and Ireland.

Islands.—The principal are the Shetland Islands, the Orkney Islands, the Hebrides or Western Islands, and the islands in the Firth of Clyde.

The *Shetland Islands* are the most northerly portion of the British archipelago. The *Orkney Islands* are divided from the mainland by the Pentland Firth. The *Hebrides* include a great number of islands

¹ About half that of England and Wales.

² The *least breadth*, between the Firths of Forth and Clyde, is only 32 miles.

³ No part of Scotland is more than 40 miles from the sea.

situated off the western coasts of Scotland: the largest among them are *Lewis, Skye, Mull, Jura, and Islay*. The small islets of *Iona* and *Staffa*, lying off the west side of Mull, are famous—Iona for its remains of ancient churches, and Staffa for its basaltic cavern. The islands in the Firth of Clyde consist of *Arran* and *Bute* (which together form one of the counties of Scotland), with a few smaller islets.

Surface.—In Scotland, as in England, the higher grounds lie chiefly on the western side of the island. But mountains cover a much larger proportional extent of Scotland than is the case with the English hills, and they reach a greater height. Scotland is principally mountainous, and its plains are of limited extent.

(1) Scotland is naturally divided into the *Highlands* and the *Lowlands*. The Highlands embrace the northern and western portion of the country; the Lowlands its southern and eastern districts. The Lowlands of Scotland, however, are by no means level. They embrace numerous hilly tracts, but the hills are less elevated, and of more rounded form, with broader valleys between, than is the case in the Highlands.

(2) The division between the Highlands and the Lowlands is marked by a broad plain called *Strathmore*, which stretches across the island in the direction of north-east and south-west, from near Stonehaven on the North Sea, to Dumbarton on the Clyde. A narrower valley, called *Glenmore*, extends through the Highland region, and forms a complete natural division across the island.

Mountains.—The mountains of Scotland may be divided into classes or systems—the Northern, Central, and Southern.

1. The **Northern System** includes the mountain-ranges and groups north of Glenmore.

2. The **Central System** comprises the *Grampians*, the highest mountains of Scotland, which stretch across the country in the direction of east and west. *Ben Nevis*, which is the highest of the Grampians, reaches 4,406 feet above the sea, and is the highest mountain, not only in Scotland, but in the British Islands.¹

3. The **Southern System** includes the *Cheviot Hills*, the *Moffat Hills*, and the *Louthers*, and also the *Pentland*, *Moorfoot*, and *Lammermoor Hills*.

Plains.—The principal are *Strathmore*, and the Plains of Caithness and Cromarty.

¹ To the south of the Grampians are the minor hill ranges known as the *Sidlaw* and *Ochil Hills*, and *Campsie Fells*.

Rivers.—Most of the larger rivers of Scotland belong to the east side of the island, and discharge their waters into the North Sea. The chief of them are the *Tweed*,¹ *Forth*, *Tay*, *Dee*, *Don*, *Spey*,² and *Ness*. Those on the west and south-west coasts are the *Clyde*, *Ayr*, and *Nith*.

The longest river of Scotland is the *Tay*.³ The *Clyde* and the *Tweed* are next in point of length. The *Clyde* is commercially the most important of the Scotch rivers. Few of the others are deep enough for ship-navigation. Many of the smaller streams form waterfalls, or cascades, in their passage through the hilly portions of the country.⁴

Lakes.—Scotland abounds in lakes, especially its Highland region. Most of them are of long and narrow shape. The largest is *Loch Lomond*,⁵ which borders on the counties of Stirling and Dumbarton. The mountain called Ben Lomond rises above its eastern shore.

The other principal lakes are *Loch Tay* and *Loch Katrine*,⁶ in Perthshire; *Loch Awe*, in Argyre; *Loch Ness*, in Inverness; *Loch Maree*, in Ross; and *Loch Leven*, in Kinross.

Climate.—The climate of Scotland is slightly colder than that of England, owing to its more northerly situation. Within the Highlands, especially, the winter is more severe; rain is also more abundant there than in the Lowland region.

Productions.—The natural productions of Scotland are the same as those of England, with a few exceptions.

1. **Animals.**—Same as those of England. *Deer*, however, are much more abundant, chiefly in the Highlands. Clydesdale is noted for a fine breed of *horses*, and the Shetland Islands for their hardy ponies.

¹ The *Tweed* is noted for its salmon fisheries.

² The *Spey* is the most rapid of British rivers.

³ The *Tay* carries more water to the sea than any other river of Great Britain.

⁴ Near Lanark are the celebrated "Falls of the Clyde."

⁵ The term *loch* is uniformly given to lakes in Scotland, as it also is to the narrow inlets of the sea upon the western and northern coasts, such as *Loch Fyne*, and others. There is, however, an important difference between the two. The inland *lochs*, such as *Loch Lomond*, have *fresh water*, like the lakes of England and other countries. The *lochs* that lie along the coast, such as *Loch Fyne*, are arms of the sea, and consist, consequently, of salt water.

⁶ *Loch Katrine* is in the beautiful tract known as the *Trossachs*, and is the scene of Scott's "Lady of the Lake."

2. Vegetation.—The vegetation consists for the most part of plants of hardier growth than those of England. The *Scotch fir*, and other members of the pine tribe, are abundant upon the mountain sides, and the heather imparts its purple colour to their lower slopes. Several of the richer fruits and plants that thrive on the southern coasts of England (as the peach and apricot) will not come to perfection in Scotland; and the hardier grains—*oats and barley*—are those most generally grown. Fine crops of *wheat*, however, are grown in many districts of southern Scotland.

3. Minerals.—The mineral resources of Scotland are very great. *Coal and iron* occur in vast abundance within an extensive district of the Lowlands—that which stretches across the country from Fifeshire on the east side to Ayrshire on the west, embracing the extensive plain between the Firths of Forth and Clyde. *Lead* is worked in some districts of southern Scotland. Good *building-stone* also occurs there. *Granite* is obtained from the Grampians, and also from the Isle of Arran, and some other localities.

Inhabitants.—Scotland is much less populous than England. In 1881 it contained 3,734,370 inhabitants. The Lowlands are much more populous than the Highlands.

The people of the Highlands and the Lowlands are distinct races, speaking different tongues. The language of the Lowlanders resembles the English tongue; the Highlanders speak a dialect called the *Gaelic*, but they are gradually becoming trained to the use of the English language.

Industry.—Manufactures and commerce are largely pursued in Lowland Scotland, chiefly within the coal and iron district between the Clyde and the Forth, and in the counties of Fife and Forfar, upon the eastern coast.

1. The *cotton* manufacture, which is the first in order of importance, characterises Glasgow, and the neighbouring tract of country on the western side of the island, within the counties of Lanark and Renfrew: the *linen* manufacture is found chiefly in the neighbourhood of the east coast—at Dundee, in Forfarshire, and Dunfermline, in Fifeshire. The making of *woollen fabrics*, as tartans (or plaids), carpets, &c., is pursued in many parts of the Lowlands, especially in the neighbourhood of Stirling and Kilmarnock.

2. In the Highlands the *rearing of cattle*, with the extensive *fisheries* pursued off the coasts, are the principal branches of industry. In the southern Lowlands, also, great numbers of cattle are reared, chiefly for the supply of the English markets.

Counties and Towns.—Scotland is divided into thirty-three counties. They are of very unequal size. Clackmannanshire, the smallest, is only one-third part the size of Rutland. Inverness-shire, the largest among them, is nearly four-fifths the size of Yorkshire.

1. *Thirteen* of the counties are within that portion of Scotland which lies to the south of the Firths of Forth and Clyde, and are entirely within the Lowlands. The names of these thirteen are Edinburgh, Linlithgow, Haddington, Berwick, Roxburgh, Selkirk, Peebles, Dumfries, Kirkeudbright, Wigton, Ayr, Lanark, and Renfrew. *Three* of the counties that are to the northward of the Firth of Forth are also wholly within the Lowland region, namely, Fife, Kinross, and Clackmannan.

2. In all, therefore, *sixteen* of the counties are comprised entirely within the Lowlands. Of the others several are partly Lowland counties and partly within the Highlands. All the counties that extend along the east coast of the country, Perth, Forfar, Kincardine, &c., belong in part to the Lowland region; but they stretch westward into the rugged mountain region of the interior, and their larger portion falls within the Highland limits.

3. Bute, Argyle, Inverness, Ross, Cromarty, and Sutherland are almost exclusively Highland counties. Stirling, Dumbarton, Perth, Forfar, Kincardine, Aberdeen, Banff, Elgin, Nairn, and Caithness are partly Highland. Buteshire consists of the two large islands of Arran and Bute, in the Firth of Clyde, with a few smaller islets.

4. The Orkney and Shetland Islands form a distinct county. Of the Hebrides, some belong to Argyle, some to Inverness, and others to Ross.

For convenience of description, the Scotch counties may be divided into four groups, viz., (a) thirteen south lowland, (b) seven north lowland, (c) three south highland, and (d) ten north highland counties.

(a) THIRTEEN SOUTH LOWLAND COUNTIES.

The *thirteen South Lowland Counties* extend from the Solway Firth and the Cheviot Hills on the south, to the Clyde and the Forth on the north.

Edinburghshire (or Mid-Lothian) is the metropolitan county of Scotland. It contains the city of *Edinburgh*, the capital of Scotland, which occupies a commanding position about two miles south of the Firth of Forth; its ancient castle crowns the summit of a high

rock which rises in the heart of the town. Adjoining Edinburgh is the port of Leith, on the shore of the neighbouring firth, which is lined, on either side of Leith, by thriving ports and fishing villages. The battle of Pinkie (1547) was fought near Musselburgh, one of these, situated at the eastern extremity of the county, where the little river Esk enters the sea. Edinburgh is the seat of a university, and in 1881 had a population of 225,000.

linlithgowshire (or West-Lothian)—chief towns, *Linlithgow* and *Bathgate*. Bo'ness trades in coal and iron.

laddingtonshire (or East-Lothian)—chief towns, *Haddington*, *Dunbar*, *North Berwick*, and *Prestonpans*. *Dunbar* fills an important place in Scottish annals, and, besides its many sieges, has had two important battles fought in its neighbourhood (in 1296 and 1650). *Prestonpans* is noted for the victory gained by the followers of Prince Charles Edward over the English in 1745.

erwickshire (or the Merse) contains the towns of *Greenlaw*, *Dunse*, *Coldstream*, and *Eyemouth*.

oxburghshire—chief towns, *Jedburgh*, *Hawick*, and *Kelso*. *Abbotsford*, the residence of Sir Walter Scott, and *Melrose*, his burial place, are both in this county, upon the banks of the *Tweed*.

elkirkshire—chief towns, *Selkirk* and *Galashiels*.

eebleshire—chief towns, *Peebles* and *Inverleithen*.

umfrieshire—chief towns, *Dumfries*, *Annan*, and *Moffat*. The town of *Dumfries* stands on the river *Nith*, near its mouth, and is the chief market for agricultural produce in the south of Scotland.

irkcudbright—chief town, *Kirkcudbright*, on the little river *Dee*.

igtonshire—chief towns, *Wigton*, *Stranraer*, and *Port Patrick*. The last-named place is only 22 miles distant from *Donaghadee*, on the coast of *Ireland*.

yrshire—chief towns, *Ayr*, *Kilmarnock*, *Ardrossan*, *Saltcoats*, *Troon*, and *Girvan*. The birthplace of *Burns* is a short distance from the town of *Ayr*, on the banks of the *Doon*. *Kilmarnock*, on the river *Irvine*, has extensive woollen manufactures.

anarkshire has for its county-town *Lanark*, in upper *Clydesdale*. But *Glasgow*, on the *Clyde*, is its most important place, and is the great seat of Scotch manufactures and commerce. *Glasgow* is the seat of a university. The towns of *Airdrie* and *Hamilton* are in this county.

enfrewshire—chief towns, *Renfrew*, *Paisley*, *Port Glasgow*, *Greenock*, and *Johnstone*. *Paisley* is largest in size, and shares in the manufacturing prosperity of *Glasgow*.

(b) SEVEN NORTH LOWLAND COUNTIES.

The *seven North Lowland Counties*, north of the Firths of Forth and Clyde, are all, with the exception of Forfar, bounded on the north by Perthshire. Between Forfar and Fife is the Firth of Tay.

Dumbartonshire (or Lennox)—chief towns, *Dumbarton* (on the Clyde, at the mouth of the little river Leven), and *Kirkintilloch*.

Stirlingshire—chief towns, *Stirling*, *Falkirk*, and *Kilsyth*. *Stirling* stands beside the river Forth, and is conspicuous by its ancient castle, which crowns the summit of a lofty rock. Adjoining *Stirling* are *St. Ninians* and *Bannockburn*, the latter noted for the great victory of Bruce, in 1314.

Clackmannanshire—chief towns, *Clackmannan* and *Alloa*.

Kinross—chief town, *Kinross*, situated on the shore of *Loch Leven*, an island in which was the scene of the confinement of *Mary Queen of Scots*, in 1568.

Fife—chief towns, *Cupar*, *Dunfermline*, *Kirkcaldy*, and *St. Andrews*. The last-named is the seat of a university.

Forfarshire (or Angus)—chief towns, *Forfar*, *Dundee*, *Montrose*, *Arbroath*, *Brechin*, and *Cupar-Angus*. *Dundee* is a large and flourishing port, on the Firth of Tay.

Kincardine (or the Mearns)—chief towns, *Stonehaven* and *Bervie*.

(c) THREE SOUTH HIGHLAND COUNTIES.

The *three South Highland Counties* occupy the centre of the country. *Buteshire* comprises the two islands of *Arran* and *Bute*, in the Firth of Clyde. *Argyle* includes many of the islands off the western coast. *Perthshire* is lowland in the east and centre, but highland in the west.

Buteshire—chief towns, *Rothesay*, on the island of *Bute*, and *Brodick*, upon the isle of *Arran*.

Argyle—chief towns, *Inverary*, *Campbeltown*, and *Oban*. *Inverary* is near the head of *Loch Fyne*, and at the mouth of the little river *Ary*. *Oban* is a rising watering-place. *Glencoe*, the scene of the infamous massacre of the *Macdonalds*, in 1692, is in this county, near its northern border-line.

Perthshire—chief towns, *Perth*, *Dunblane*, *Doune*, *Dunkeld*, and *Crieff*. *Perth* is a fine city on the river *Tay*. The western part of the county includes the district of the *Trosachs*, famed for its scenic beauties.

(d) TEN NORTH HIGHLAND COUNTIES.

The *ten North Highland Counties* embrace the whole of Scotland north of the Grampians, and also the groups of the Orkney and Shetland Islands. Each of the counties of Aberdeen, Banff, Elgin, and Nairn, are partly highland and partly lowland; but those of Inverness, Ross, Cromarty, Sutherland, and Caithness, are entirely highland. The county of Orkney and Shetland consists of the groups of islands so called.

Aberdeenshire has for its capital the city of *Aberdeen*, situated between the mouths of the rivers Dee and Don. Aberdeen is a flourishing port, and the seat of a university. The other towns are Peterhead, Fraserburgh, and Inverury. Balmoral, the Highland residence of Her Majesty Queen Victoria, is in this county, on the south bank of the Dee.

Banffshire—chief towns, *Banff* (on the river Doveran), Portsoy, and Cullen.

Elgin (or Moray)—chief towns, *Elgin* and Forres.

Nairnshire—chief town, *Nairn*, on a river of the same name. A few miles south of Nairn is the village of Auldearn, which was the scene of one of Montrose's victories in 1645.

Inverness-shire—chief towns, *Inverness* and Portree. Inverness is at the mouth of the river Ness, which issues from Loch Ness and flows into Loch Beaulay, at the head of the Moray Firth. A few miles east of Inverness is Culloden Moor, the scene of Prince Charles Edward's final defeat, in 1746. Ben Nevis, the highest mountain in Britain, is in this county.

Ross-shire—chief towns:—*Tain*, on the Dornoch Firth, Dingwall, and Stornoway. Stornoway is on the island of Lewis.

Cromartyshire—chief town, *Cromarty*, at the entrance of Cromarty Firth.

Sutherland—chief town, *Dornoch*, on the northern side of the firth so called.

Caithness—chief towns, *Wick* and Thurso. Wick is a great seat of the herring-fishery.

Orkney and Shetland—chief towns, *Kirkwall*, on the island of Pomona or Mainland, the largest of the Orkneys, and Lerwick, on the mainland of the Shetland group.

III. IRELAND.

IRELAND lies to the west of Great Britain.¹

Boundaries.—On the *north*, *west*, and *south*, Ireland is bounded by the Atlantic Ocean ; on the *east* by the Irish Sea, which is connected with the Atlantic by the North Channel and St. George's Channel.²

Extent.—The area of Ireland is 31,874 square miles, or rather more than two-thirds that of England and Wales.

The *greatest length* (from Malin Head to Mizen Head) is 290 miles.

The *greatest breadth* (from Howth Head to Slyne Head) is 175 miles.

Coasts.—The west and south-west coasts of Ireland are more irregular than the east or south-east coasts. The chief features to be noted are :—

1. **Capes.**—The principal capes are :—Malin Head, the *most northerly* point ; Dunmore Head, the *most westerly* ; and Mizen Head, the *most southerly*. Besides these we have Benmore or Fair Head on the *north* ; Achil Head, Slyne Head, Loop Head, Kerry Head, on the *west* ; Cape Clear, Hook Head, and Carnsore Point, on the *south* ; Wicklow Head and Howth Head on the *east*.

2. **Inlets.**—The principal inlets are :—Dublin Bay, Dundalk Bay, Strangford Lough, and Belfast Lough, on the *east* ; Lough Foyle and Lough Swilly, on the *north* ; Donegal Bay, Sligo Bay, Clew Bay, Galway Bay, the mouth of the Shannon, Dingle Bay, Kenmare Bay, and Bantry Bay, on the *west* ; Cork Harbour and Waterford Harbour, on the *south*.

3. **Islands.**—None of any considerable size. The principal are :—Lambay, on the *east* ; Rathlin, on the *north* ; Achil, Aran, and Valentia, on the *west* ; and Cape Clear Island on the *south*.

Mountains.—The interior of Ireland is generally level, the mountains lying for the most part in the neighbourhood of the coast. The principal are :—

1. The *Mourne Mountains* and *Wicklow Hills*, on the east.
2. *Mountains of Donegal*, in the north-west.
3. *Kerry Mountains*, in the south-west.
4. *Mountains of Connemara*, in the west.

¹ The shores of Ireland and Great Britain are nearest each other between Fair Head and the Mull of Cantire, where the channel is only 13 miles wide.

² Ireland is divided from *England* by the Irish Sea ; from *Wales* by St. George's Channel ; and from *Scotland* by the North Channel.

Rivers.—Ireland abounds in inland waters. The principal rivers are :—

1. On the north, the *Bann* and the *Foyle*.
2. On the west, the *Shannon*, *Moy*, and *Erne*.
3. On the south, the *Barrow*, *Suir*, *Blackwater*, *Lee*, and *Bandon*.
4. On the east, the *Lagan*, *Boyne*, *Liffey*, and *Slaney*.

* * All the rivers on the north, west, and south flow into the Atlantic Ocean, and those on the east into the Irish Sea.

* * The Liffey has Dublin on its banks. The Shannon is the longest river in the British Islands. It passes through the large lakes of Allen, Fee, and Derg, and is navigable nearly to its source.

Lakes.—The largest lake in Ireland is Lough¹ Neagh, in Ulster. The other principal lakes are *Lough Erne*, *Lough Ree*, *Lough Derg*, *Lough Mask*, *Lough Corrib*, and the *Lakes of Killarney*.

Lough Neagh is the largest lake in the British Islands. The Lakes of Killarney are noted for their beautiful scenery.

Climate.—The climate of Ireland is moister than that of England. This preserves a more constant verdure to the fields, and a superior freshness and brightness of colour to its general vegetation. The winters are nearly always mild, and the prevalent winds, which are from the west, are laden with the warm and moist vapours derived from the waters of the Atlantic.

Productions.—In respect of mineral produce, Ireland is inferior to England and Scotland in one essential particular—coal. This affects injuriously its manufacturing industry.

The *coal-fields* of Ireland are of limited extent compared to those of Great Britain, and their produce small in amount. *Peat* is the fuel most generally consumed, but coal is imported from the English and Scotch seaports. There are also ores of *copper*, *lead*, *iron*, and other mineral produce, and a rich variety of *marbles* and *building-stones*.

¹ *Lough* in Ireland is equivalent to *loch* in Scotland, and is applied to inlets of the sea as well as to inland lakes. *Lough Neagh* is more than three times the size of Loch Lomond in Scotland, and fourteen times larger than Windermere in England.

Inhabitants.—The population of Ireland amounted, in 1881, to 5,159,000,—about three millions fewer than the number of its inhabitants forty years previously. Famine, combined with extensive emigration, has caused this unexampled diminution during the interval.

The great majority of the people of Ireland belong to the Celtic race—the same as that by which the Highlands of Scotland are peopled; but in Ulster, the north-east province of the island, the population is principally of Lowland Scotch origin. People of English descent are scattered over every portion of the island. The native language of Ireland is rapidly becoming superseded by the English tongue.

Industry.—Ireland is chiefly an agricultural country, and a very large portion of the land is in pasture. *Cattle and pigs*, with various farm-produce, constitute (over by far the greater part of the island) its chief industrial wealth.

The *linen* manufacture flourishes in Ulster. *Woollen* and *cotton* goods are also made, but in smaller quantity. A great part of the *commerce* of Ireland consists in the supply of its agricultural produce to the English market.

Counties and Towns.—Ireland is divided into thirty-two counties, and into four provinces. The provinces are *Leinster*, *Ulster*, *Connaught*, and *Munster*—*Leinster* in the east, *Ulster* in the north, *Connaught* in the west, and *Munster* in the south.

1. **LEINSTER** contains twelve counties, which are named in the following table, with the chief towns of each. The county towns are distinguished by italics :—

| Counties. | Chief Towns. | Counties. | Chief towns. |
|--------------|---|----------------|---|
| Dublin . . | <i>Dublin</i> , Kingstown | Queen's County | <i>Maryborough</i> . |
| Wicklow . . | <i>Wicklow</i> , Arklow. | King's County | <i>Tullamore</i> , <i>Parsonstown</i> . |
| Wexford . . | <i>Wexford</i> . | Westmeath . . | <i>Mullingar</i> , <i>Athlone</i> . |
| Kilkenny . . | <i>Kilkenny</i> . | Longford . . | <i>Longford</i> . |
| Carlow . . | <i>Carlow</i> . | Meath . . . | <i>Trim</i> , <i>Navan</i> . |
| Kildare . . | <i>Athy</i> , <i>Naas</i> , <i>Maynooth</i> . | Louth . . . | <i>Dundalk</i> , <i>Drogheda</i> . |

DUBLIN,¹ situated at the mouth of the river Liffey, is the metropolis of Ireland, and is, besides, a great seat of trade. It is an archiepiscopal city, and possesses two cathedrals, and four universities. *Kingstown*, on the south side of Dublin Bay, has also considerable trade.

Kilkenny, on the river Nore (an affluent of the Barrow), is the largest inland town of Ireland. *Wexford*, at the outlet of the river Slaney into Vexford Haven, is a port of considerable trade. *Drogheda* and *Dundalk*, to the northward of Dublin, are flourishing commercial ports. *Drogheda* stands on the river Boyne, near its mouth. The battle of the Boyne, in 690, between the armies of William III. and James II., was fought on the banks of the river, a short distance above the town. *Athlone*, on the Shannon, is a thriving inland town, partly in Leinster and partly in Connaught.

2. ULSTER has nine counties, which, with their towns, are named below :—

| Counties. | Chief towns. | Counties. | Chief towns. |
|-------------|--|-------------|--------------------------------|
| Armagh . . | <i>Armagh</i> , Portadown | Donegal . . | <i>Lifford</i> , Ballyshannon. |
| Down . . | <i>Downpatrick</i> , Newry, Donaghadee. | Tyrone . . | <i>Omagh</i> , Strabane. |
| Antrim . . | <i>Belfast</i> , Lisburn, Carrickfergus. | Fermanagh . | <i>Enniskillen</i> . |
| Londonderry | <i>Londonderry</i> , Coleraine. | Monaghan . | <i>Monaghan</i> . |
| | | Cavan . . | <i>Cavan</i> . |

*Belfast*² is the largest city of Ulster, and the chief seat of the linen manufactures of Ireland. It has also manufactures of cotton, with potteries, glass-works, &c., and a larger amount of foreign trade than any other city in the island. *Armagh* has a great share in the linen manufacture, and is an archiepiscopal see—the ecclesiastical metropolis of Ireland. *Londonderry*, on the river Foyle, has considerable trade, and is famous in story for the gallant defence made by its Protestant inhabitants against the besieging army of James II., in 1689. *Coleraine*, near the mouth of the Bann, is a flourishing port. The Giants' Causeway, on the north coast of Antrim, is one of the chief natural wonders of the kingdom.

¹ In 1831 Dublin had a population of 320,000. A short distance south of Dublin begins the romantic district of the Wicklow Mountains.

² Population, (1831) 207,000.

3. CONNAUGHT includes five counties, as follow :—

| Counties. | Chief towns. | Counties. | Chief towns. |
|-------------|----------------------------|-------------|-----------------------------|
| Leitrim . . | <i>Carrick-on-Shannon.</i> | Sligo . . . | <i>Sligo.</i> |
| Roscommon . | <i>Roscommon.</i> | Mayo . . . | <i>Castlebar, Westport.</i> |
| | | Galway . . | <i>Galway, Tuam.</i> |

Galway, on the shore of Galway Bay, at the mouth of a stream which issues from Lough Corrib, is the largest town of Connaught, and is a important packet-station. Some distance to the westward begins the romantic tract of country known as Connemara, a region of alternate hills and valleys, with enclosed lakes and mountain streams. *Aughrin* a village in the eastern part of the county (a few miles distant from the right bank of the Suck), witnessed a decisive victory gained by the arm of William III. over the troops of James II., in 1691. *Sligo*, at the head of Sligo Bay, has considerable trade.

4. MUNSTER includes six counties, which, with their chief towns, are as follow :—

| Counties. | Chief towns. | Counties. | Chief towns. |
|------------|--|-----------|--|
| Clare . . | <i>Ennis.</i> | Waterford | <i>Waterford, Dungarvan</i> |
| Limerick . | <i>Limerick.</i> | Cork . . | <i>Cork, Queenstown, Youghal, Bandon, Kinsale.</i> |
| Tipperary | <i>Clonmel, Carrick-on-Shannon, Thurles, Cashel.</i> | Kerry . . | <i>Tralee, Killarney.¹</i> |

Cork, on the river Lee, at its entrance into Cork Harbour, is the largest city of Munster, and has a very extensive foreign trade. *Queenstown* (formerly Cove) is on an island in Cork Harbour. *Limerick*, on the Shannon, is memorable for the sieges it underwent, in 1690 and the following year, in behalf of the Roman Catholic cause. *Waterford*, on the Suir, immediately above its junction with the Barrow, has considerable export trade.

¹ The beautiful *Lakes of Killarney* are three in number—an Upper, Middle, and Lower Lake. The town of Killarney is close beside the Lower Lake.

Government.—The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland is a constitutional and hereditary monarchy. The executive power is in the hands of the sovereign; the legislative power is divided between the sovereign, the House of Lords, and the House of Commons—the last consisting of members elected by qualified classes of the people. The House of Commons alone has the right to regulate the taxes and expenditure of the kingdom, and the Ministers of the Crown are responsible to it for their public proceedings. The people of the British Islands thus enjoy the blessings of a free constitution. The expression of opinion is free to all classes.

1. **Religion.**—The Protestant religion almost universally prevails in England and Wales, and also in Scotland. The *English Church* is under the government of two archbishops and twenty-six bishops. There are numerous dissenters from the established form of worship. In Scotland, the *Presbyterian Church*, under the General Assembly of Divines, is the established form of church government. But there is a numerous body of seceders from its ranks. The Protestant Church of Ireland, a branch of the Anglican Church, but disestablished in 1869, is under two archbishops and ten bishops. The majority of the Irish people are *Roman Catholics*.

2. **Education.**—On the whole, good—especially in Scotland. *Elementary education* is mainly given in public schools, under government inspection. *Higher education* is well provided for in numerous grammar schools, colleges, and universities.

Colonies.—Besides Great Britain and Ireland, the British Empire embraces a vast number of colonies and dependencies, including amongst them territories in every quarter of the globe. These are briefly enumerated in the following list :—

1. In **Europe** :—Heligoland, Gibraltar, Malta.
2. In **Asia** :—British India, Ceylon, Straits Settlements, Aden, Hong-Kong, Labuan, Cyprus.
3. In **Africa** :—Gambia, Sierra Leone, Gold Coast, Lagos, the Cape Colony and dependencies, Natal, Ascension, St. Helena, Mauritius.
4. In **America** :—Dominion of Canada, Newfoundland, Bahamas, Bermudas, British West India Islands, British Guiana, Honduras, Falkland Islands.
5. In **Australasia** :—New South Wales, Victoria, South Australia, Western Australia, Queensland, Tasmania, New Zealand, Fiji Islands.

FRANCE.

FRANCE lies on the western side of Europe, and stretches across the continent, from the shores of the ocean to the Mediterranean.

Boundaries.—On the *north* by the English Channel and Belgium; on the *east* by Germany, Switzerland, and part Italy; on the *south* by the Mediterranean Sea and Spain; and on the *west* by the Bay of Biscay.

France is divided from *England* by the English Channel and Strait of Dover; from *Belgium* and *Germany* by an artificial frontier; from *Switzerland* by Mount Jura; from *Italy* by the Western Alps; and from *Spain* by the Pyrenees.

Extent.—France is about three and a half times larger than England and Wales, its area amounting to 200,000 square miles. Its length is about 600 miles, and its breadth about 540 miles.

Coasts.—France has three lines of sea-coast. Two of them are continuous—the Channel and the Bay of Biscay; the third belongs to the Mediterranean. It is therefore well situated for maritime commerce.

1. **Capes.**—Griz Nez and La Hague on the north-west; Ushant and Bec du Raz on the west.

2. **Inlets.**—The only considerable openings are the Bay of St. Malo, the estuaries of the Seine, Loire, Gironde; and the Gulf of Lions.

Islands.—At the entrance of the English Channel, *Ouessant* (or Ushant); in the Bay of Biscay, *Belle Isle*, *Ré*, and *Oléron*; in the Mediterranean, the large island of *Corsica*.

1. *Corsica* is an Italian island, but has belonged to France since 1769 and now forms one of the departments into which the country is divided. *Monte Rotondo*, in the interior of the island, is a lofty peak 9,600 above the sea.

2. The *Channel Islands*, off the north-west coast of France, belong to Great Britain, and have been attached to the English crown ever since the Norman conquest. They consist of *Jersey*, *Guernsey*, *Alderney*, *Sark*, and a few smaller islets. The chief town of Jersey, the largest of the number, is *St. Helier*.

Natural Features.—France is, in general, a level country ; but it is mountainous on some parts of its border-line, and is hilly in portions of the interior, towards the centre and east.¹ It is well watered by numerous rivers ; but there are no lakes of any considerable size.

1. **Mountains.**—The principal mountain-ranges are :—

(1) The *Alps*, which divide France from Italy, and rise above the snow-line.² The loftiest point is *Mont Blanc*, 15,780 feet high.³

(2) *Mount Jura*—less elevated than the Alps—extends along the border of France and Switzerland.

(3) The *Pyrenees* form the border between France and Spain, and are covered with snow on their higher peaks, though they are not so lofty as the Alps.

(4) The *Cevennes* are a long chain of hills in the east of France, upon the western side of the valley of the Rhone.

(5) The *Vosges* are further to the northward, on the border of Germany.

(6) The *Mountains of Auvergne* are a group of extinct volcanoes in central France.

2. **Rivers.**—France has four considerable rivers, besides many of less size. The four great rivers are :—the *Seine*, flowing into the English Channel ; the *Loire* and *Garonne*, flowing into the Bay of Biscay ; and the *Rhone*, flowing into the Mediterranean.

The *Seine*, *Loire*, and *Garonne*, are entirely within the French territory. The upper part of the *Rhone* (above the Lake of Geneva) belongs to Switzerland. The upper portions of the *Moselle* and *Meuse*, both of which are affluents of the Rhine, are within France.

Climate.—France is, on the whole, a warmer country than England, especially in the south. The air is generally drier than in our own country. In the north of France, however, the winters are often severe.

¹ In the south-west there is a remarkable tract known as the *Landes*, which is a flat, sandy waste—lined by sand-hills along the coast, and backed inland by pine-forests.

² That is, the line at which, owing to the severity of the cold, the snow never melts. The height of the snow-line in the Alps is between 8,000 and 9,000 feet.

³ *Mont Blanc* is on the frontier-line of France and Italy.

Productions.—The productions of northern France resemble those of England, but its *forests* are much more extensive; and many wild animals are still found in the mountainous districts.

1. The *vine* is abundantly grown in the east, centre, and south of France; and the *olive*, the *mulberry*, and the *fig*, in the south.

2. In mineral produce France is inferior to England—*coal* especially being less abundant. *Iron*, however, is plentifully distributed.

Inhabitants.—At the last census, (December, 1876) the total number was 37,000,000, or 180 to the square mile.

1. **Race and Language.**—The greater number of the people are *French*, and the *French language*, which is mainly derived from the Latin, is widely used by the higher classes all over Europe.

2. **Education.**—Public education is well advanced, and is directly under the control of the government.

3. **Religion.**—The great majority of the French nation are followers of the Church of Rome.

Industry.—Agriculture, manufactures, and commerce, are all extensively pursued, and the productions of French industry are of high value. *Wines* and *brandy* are two of the characteristic articles of produce. Of textile fabrics, *silk* takes in France the first place in importance. The silk manufacture is chiefly pursued in the south; the *woollen* manufacture, and also the making of *linen* and *lace*, principally in the north; the *cotton* manufacture in the north and east.

1. *Lyons*, *Nismes*, and *Avignon* are noted for their silk goods; *Rouen*, *Amiens*, and *Abbeville* for their woollen fabrics; *Lille* and *Valenciennes* for their laces and muslins; *Paris* for its artificial flowers, gloves, jewellery, and other works of taste and ornament.

2. *Marseilles*, *Bordeaux*, and *Havre* are the three great seats of the foreign export trade. The first-named is on the Mediterranean; *Bordeaux* is on the estuary of the Gironde (as the outlet of the river Garonne is called), and is the chief emporium of the wine trade; *Havre* is at the mouth of the Seine, and forms the port of Paris.

Government.—The present government of France is republican in form; the Franco-German war of 1870-1 having involved the downfall of the imperial dynasty.

Divisions and Towns.—France is divided into eighty-six departments, which are generally named according to the rivers which flow through them.

1. Twelve of the departments are included within the basin of the river Seine, which corresponds (among the older divisions of France) to the provinces of Champagne, Isle of France, and Lower Normandy. The most considerable towns within the basin of the Seine are Paris, Rouen, Havre, Troyes, and Rheims. *PARIS*, the capital of France, is in the department of Seine. It stands upon either bank of the river Seine, and contains nearly 2,000,000 inhabitants. *Rouen*, on the Lower Seine, has large woollen manufactories, and *Havre*, at the mouth of the same river, is the port of Paris. *Troyes* is on the Upper Seine.

2. Seventeen of the departments are within the basin of the river Loire, which comprehends the ancient provinces of Auvergne, Berry, Orleanois, Touraine, Maine, Anjou, and parts of Poitou and Brittany. The chief towns within the basin of the Loire are Nantes, Tours, Orleans, Poitiers, Moulins, Clermont, and St. Etienne. *Nantes* is a flourishing port on the Loire, a few miles above its mouth. *Tours* and *Orleans* are both on the Loire. *Moulins* is on the Allier. *St. Etienne*, near the Upper Loire, is the chief seat of the iron-works of France.

3. Thirteen of the departments are within the basin of the river Garonne, which includes the ancient Guienne, with parts of Gascony and Languedoc. The most important towns within the basin of the Garonne are Toulouse and Bordeaux. *Toulouse* is on the Upper Garonne; *Bordeaux*, the great wine port, at the head of the estuary which the river forms above its outlet.

4. Seventeen of the departments are within the basin of the Rhone, which comprehends the ancient Burgundy, Franche-Comté, Lyonnais, Dauphiny, and the chief parts of Provence and Languedoc. The principal towns within the basin of the Rhone are *Lyons*, *Dijon*, *Besançon*, *Avignon*, and *Nismes*. Lyons, at the junction of the Saone with the Rhone, is the second city of France in population, and the great seat of the silk manufacture. Avignon is on the Rhone, lower down its course.

5. Four of the departments are within the valleys of the Moselle and the Meuse (Rhine-basin). The principal town within this region is *Nancy*, on the Meurthe, an affluent of the Moselle. Alsace and a large portion of Lorraine, previously French, were transferred to Germany in 1871.

6. Three of the departments lie to the north of the Seine valley, and include the ancient Picardy, Artois, and French Flanders. The most important towns in this portion of France are Amiens, Abbeville, Dieppe, Boulogne, Calais, Lille, Valenciennes, and Arras. Both *Amiens*

and *Abbeville* are on the river *Somme*, which flows into the English Channel. *Cressy* and *Agincourt*, names well-known in history, are in this part of France, the former near the *Somme*, and *Agincourt* further to the north. *Calais*, on the strait which divides the French and English coasts, is only 21 miles distant from *Dover*.

7. Seven of the departments are between the basins of the *Lower Seine* and *Loire*. They lie along the shores of the channel and the neighbouring ocean, and include the chief part of the ancient province of *Brittany* and *Normandy*. The principal towns in this division of France are *Rennes*, *Caen*, *Cherbourg*, *St. Malo*, and *Brest*. *Cherbourg* and *Brest* are important naval stations.

8. Four of the departments occupy the tract of country between the *Lower Loire* and the mouth of the *Garonne*, corresponding to the ancient *Saintonge* and *Angoumois*, with the chief part of *Poitou*. The principal towns in this part of France are *La Rochelle*, *Rochefort*, and *Cognac*. The two former are seaports; *Cognac*, in the valley of the river *Charente*, is famous for its brandies.

9. Three departments are south-west of the *Garonne* basin. They include the ancient *Bearn* and *Navarre*, with part of *Gascony*. The chief towns are *Bayonne* and *Pau*. *Bayonne* is at the mouth of the river *Adour*, which enters the *Bay of Biscay*.

10. Three departments lie south-east of the *Garonne* basin, along the coast of the *Mediterranean*, and for the most part within the ancient *Languedoc*. The chief towns are *Montpellier*, *Nîmes*, and *Narbonne*.

11. Upon the coast of the *Mediterranean*, to the east of the *Rhône* and within the ancient *Provence*, are *Marseilles* and *Toulon*, the former a flourishing commercial city; the latter an important naval station.

12. The *Island of Corsica* includes the towns of *Bastia* and *Ajaccio*, the latter distinguished as the birthplace of *Napoleon I.*

Colonies.—France possesses the following colonies and foreign dependencies:—

1. **In Africa.**—*Algeria*; *St. Louis*, at the mouth of river *Senegal*; *Goree*, near *Cape Verde*; *Réunion*, or *Bourbon*, in the *Indian Ocean*.

2. **In Asia.**—*Pondicherry*, in *India*; *French Cochinchina*, in the *Indo-Chinese Peninsula*.

3. **In America.**—*Islands of Martinique*, *Guadaloupe*, and *St. Bartholomew*, in the *West Indies*; *French Guiana*; *Islands of St. Pierre and Miquelon*, in the *Gulf of St. Lawrence*.

4. **In Polynesia.**—*New Caledonia*, *Loyalty Islands*, *Marques Islands*, and *Society Islands*.

BELGIUM.

BELGIUM is a small country in the west of Europe, adjacent to France.

Boundaries.—It is bounded on the *north* by Holland ; on the *east* by Prussia ; on the *south* by France ; and on the *west* by the North Sea or German Ocean.

Extent.—Its area is 11,000 square miles, which is nearly one-fifth the size of England and Wales.¹

Surface.—The greater part of Belgium is level ; but in its eastern division the ground becomes hilly, and includes the wooded region of the Ardennes.

Rivers.—The *Meuse* (or *Maas*) and the *Scheldt* are the two chief rivers of Belgium, but both of them pass thence into Holland, and have their lower courses in that country.

Climate.—The climate is temperate, and generally resembles that of England.

Productions.—The most valuable of the natural productions are *coal*² and *iron*, which Belgium contains in rich abundance.

Inhabitants.—Belgium has above 5,000,000 inhabitants, and is, for its size, a very populous country.

1. **Language.**—The language of the lower orders of the Belgian population is *Flemish*, but the upper classes of society speak *French*.

2. **Religion.**—Nearly all the Belgians belong to the *Roman Catholic Church*. There are only about 13,000 Protestants.

Industry.—The Belgians are highly distinguished by their industry.

1. Nearly every part of the country is well cultivated. *Corn, flax, hemp, madder, tobacco*, and *clover* are grown.

2. The *woollen, linen, lace, cotton*, and *silk* manufactures are largely carried on, and the *iron-works*³ are very extensive. The *fine laces* of Brussels, Mechlin, and Antwerp are particularly celebrated.

¹ Its *greatest extent*, from east to west, is about 160 miles, and from north to south about 115 miles. Its *sea-coast* is only 40 miles in length.

² Belgium supplies more coal than any other country in Europe, excepting Britain. The two chief coal-fields are those of *Hainault* and *Liège*.

³ *Iron-works* are numerous in the eastern part of the kingdom, towards the banks of the Meuse.

3. **Commerce.**—The principal *imports* are colonial produce and wool; the chief *exports* are coal, iron, manufactured goods, and agricultural produce. The chief ports are Antwerp, Ostend, and Bruges.

. The internal trade and industry of Belgium are greatly facilitated by excellent *roads*, numerous *canals*, and an extensive system of *railways*, radiating from Mechlin.¹

Government.—Belgium is a kingdom under constitutional forms, and prior to the revolution of 1830 was attached to the neighbouring kingdom of the Netherlands.

Divisions and Towns.—Belgium is divided into nine provinces, which, with their chief towns, are as follow :—

| Provinces. | Towns. |
|-------------------------|----------------------|
| WEST FLANDERS | Bruges, Ostend. |
| EAST FLANDERS | Ghent, St. Nicholas. |
| HAINAUT | Tournay, Mons. |
| SOUTH BRABANT | Brussels, Louvain. |
| ANTWERP | Antwerp, Mechlin. |
| LIMBURG | St. Tron, Hasselt. |
| LIEGE | Liège, Verviers. |
| NAMUR | Namur, Dinant. |
| LUXEMBURG | Arlon, Masche. |

BRUSSELS (population 376,000) is the capital of Belgium.* It stands on the river Senne, in the centre of the kingdom, and is a well-built and attractive city. Ten miles to the south is the battlefield of Waterloo.

Antwerp, on the river Scheldt, is the principal port of Belgium, and the chief seat of its foreign trade. *Mechlin* is the centre of the railway system of Belgium, and is noted for its lace manufactures. *Ostend*, on the North Sea, is a port of secondary importance. *Liège*, in the eastern part of the kingdom, on the river Meuse, is the chief seat of the iron works of Belgium. *Mons* and *Namur* are within the principal coal district. *Ghent*, on the Scheldt, is the chief seat of the cotton manufacture.

. Belgium formed part of the region known in former ages as the *Low Countries*, and was the frequent theatre of war. The sites of numerous *battle-fields* are, therefore, within its limits. Among them are :—Steinkirk, Landen, Fontenoy, Quatre-bras, and Waterloo.

¹ Or Malines.

² Nearly all the great cities of Belgium were more populous at a former period—during the 13th and 14th centuries—than they are at the present day.

HOLLAND, OR THE NETHERLANDS.

Boundaries.—Holland is bounded on the north and west by the North Sea, on the east by Germany, and on the south by Belgium.

Extent.—The *area* of Holland is 20,000 square miles, which is about three times the size of Wales.

Coasts.—Holland includes the Zuyder Zee¹ and the Dollart Zee,² both of them arms of the North Sea. The coasts are low and flat, and consist, in many parts, of islands formed by the mouths of the great rivers.

Islands.—Two principal groups: one in the north-west (Texel, &c.), and another in the south-west (Walcheren, &c.)

Surface.—Holland is a flat country, and large parts of it are naturally marshy.

Along the coast the land is, in some places, below the level of the adjacent sea, which is only prevented from overflowing it by means of *dykes*, or mounds of artificial construction. Many tracts, now fertile, have been by like means reclaimed from the sea.

Rivers.—The three principal are the *Rhine*, *Meuse*, and *Scheldt*, all of these flowing into the North Sea.

The Rhine and the Meuse form a united *delta*, and their various channels render the country, in that part, a complete net-work of water-courses. Besides these rivers and their branches, Holland is also traversed by a vast number of canals.

Climate.—The climate is temperate, but rather colder, and also moister, than that of England.

Productions.—There are no metals, and but few *minerals*. The country is chiefly famous for its dairy and farm produce.

Inhabitants.—In 1877 the population of Holland numbered 3,800,000,—an average of 190 to the square mile.

1. **Race and Language.**—The people mostly belong to the Teutonic or German race; but the common language is *Dutch*.

2. **Education.**—In an advanced condition.

3. **Religion.**—The *Protestant* religion is followed by about two-thirds of the inhabitants—the rest are *Roman Catholics*.

Industry.—The people of Holland are distinguished for their industry, frugality, and cleanliness. They are among the best farmers and most successful traders in the world.

Farm and dairy produce (cattle, butter, cheese, &c.), and *foreign commerce*, are the things which chiefly engage the attention of the Dutch nation. They have a large carrying-trade in the productions of other lands. The *fisheries* are also of value, and there are also some important *manufactures*.

. The internal trade of Holland is carried on mostly by the rivers and canals. Of the latter, the principal are the *North Holland Canal*, from the Helder to the Y, and the deeper *North Sea Canal*, from Amsterdam to the North Sea.

Government.—The kingdom of the Netherlands is an *hereditary monarchy*, under constitutional forms.

Provinces and Towns.—Holland includes ten provinces, besides portions of Limburg and Luxemburg. The last is properly a part of Germany, but is attached to the Dutch crown. Their names, with the chief towns in each, are :—

| Provinces. | Towns. |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------|
| NORTH HOLLAND | Amsterdam, Haarlem, Horn, Alkmaar. |
| SOUTH HOLLAND | Rotterdam, The Hague, Leyden. |
| ZEELAND | Middleburg, Flushing. |
| NORTH BRABANT | Hertogensbosch, Breda. |
| UTRECHT | Utrecht. |
| GUELDERLAND | Nimeguen, Zutphen. |
| OVERYSSEL | Zwoll. |
| DRENTHE | Meppel. |
| FRIESLAND | Leeuwarden. |
| GRONINGEN | Groningen. |
| LIMBURG | Maestricht. |
| LUXEMBOURG | Luxembourg. |

AMSTERDAM (population, 300,000) is the largest city of the Netherlands, and the great seat of its foreign trade. It stands at the entrance of the river Amstel, into an estuary of the Zuyder Zee. But *The Hague* is the seat of government, and forms the political capital of the kingdom. *Rotterdam* is on the river Meuse. *Leyden*, on a branch of the Rhine, to the south-west of Amsterdam, is famous for its university.

Colonies.—The chief foreign possessions of Holland are :—

1. In the *East Indies* :—*Java*, parts of *Sumatra*, *Borneo*, &c.

2. In the *New World* :—Part of *Guiana*, and some of the *West India Islands*.

SWITZERLAND.

Boundaries.—SWITZERLAND is an entirely inland country, and is bounded on the *north* by Germany, on the *east* by Austria, on the *south* by Italy, and on the *west* by France.

Extent.—Its *area* is nearly 16,000 square miles—little more than a third part of the size of England and Wales.

Mountains.—Two-thirds of the surface of Switzerland consist of high mountains and intervening valleys: the remaining third is an elevated plain. It is, therefore, a mountainous country.

The Alps cover the greater part of Switzerland, and form a stupendous chain along the Swiss and Italian border. *Mont Blanc*, the highest summit of the Alps, is not in Switzerland, but within the adjacent province of Savoy. The highest of the Swiss Alps are *Mont Rosa*, *Mont Cervin* (or the Matterhorn), *Finster-aar-horn*, and the *Jungfrau*. All the higher portions of these and other lofty summits are covered with perpetual snow.

Rivers.—The four principal are the *Rhine*, the *Rhone*, the *Aar*, and the *Inn*.

The *Rhine* flows through the Lake of Constance; the *Rhone* through the Lake of Geneva. The *Aar* is a tributary of the Rhine; the *Inn* is a tributary of the Danube.

Lakes.—The largest are *Geneva* and *Constance*; next come *Neuchâtel*, *Lucerne*, and *Zurich*.

Climate.—The air of the higher open country is cool, but on the shores of the lakes and in other sheltered localities the climate is warm, more so than that of England.

Productions.—The *vine* flourishes in the lower valleys and plains. But Switzerland is rather pastoral than an agricultural country. Some metals and minerals are found, but not much worked.

Inhabitants.—Switzerland had in 1880 above 2,800,000 inhabitants—an average of 180 to the square mile.

1. **Race and Language.**—The Swiss are partly of French and partly of German descent, and speak respectively the languages of France and Germany.¹

¹ In one of the Swiss cantons—that of Tessin, to the south of the Alps—the people are of *Italian* origin, and speak the Italian language.

2. **Education.**—Education is compulsory, and highly advanced, especially in the Protestant cantons.

3. **Religion.**—Rather more than half the Swiss people are Protestants; the rest belong to the Roman Catholic Church.

Industry.—The Swiss are a frugal and industrious race.

Manufactures are extensively pursued, chiefly silk and cotton goods, watches,¹ and musical boxes. In the mountain-tracts the *rearing of cattle* and the *produce of the dairy* are the chief features of Swiss industry. In spite of great natural disadvantages, the commerce of Switzerland is extensive. Communication with Italy is carried on by means of several magnificent roads across the Alps, and the railway systems of the two countries are now united by the recently completed great *St. Gothard Tunnel*, which is upwards of nine miles in length.

Government.—Switzerland is a federal republic. Each canton has a government of its own, and the whole are joined in a federal union, governed by a Diet.

Divisions and Towns.—Switzerland comprehends twenty-two cantons, the names of which, with the principal towns in each, are as follow :—

| Cantons. | Towns. | Cantons. | Towns. |
|-----------------|---------------|-----------------|---------------------|
| BERNE | Berne. | ZUG | Zug |
| SOLEURE | Soleure. | LUCERNE | Lucerne. |
| BASEL | Basle. | UNTERWALDEN .. | Stanz, Sarnen. |
| AARGAU | Aargau. | URI | Altorf. |
| ZURICH | Zurich. | FRIBOURG | Fribourg. |
| SCHAFFHAUSEN .. | Schaffhausen. | NEUCHÂTEL | Neuchâtel. |
| THURGAU | Frauenfeld. | VAUD | Lausanne. |
| APPENZELL | Appenzell. | GENÈVE | Geneva. |
| ST. GALL | St. Gall. | VALAIS | Sion. |
| GLARUS | Glarus. | GRISONS | Chur or Coire. |
| SCHWYZ | Schwyz. | TESSIN | Bellinzona, Lugano. |

BERNE (population 36,000) is the capital of Switzerland. It stands on the river Aar. Geneva, Zurich, and Basle are next in importance. *Geneva*, the largest town in Switzerland, is on the Rhone, at its outlet from the Lake of Geneva. *Zurich* is at the foot of the Lake of Zurich, at the outlet of the river Limmat, which joins the Aar. *Basle* is on the Rhine, and is the seat of a considerable trade.

. The Lake of Lucerne, in the heart of the mountain country, is enclosed by the four forest cantons of Schwyz, Uri, Unterwalden, and Lucerne—the cradle of Swiss independence.

¹ About half a million watches are made annually, occupying above 35,000 workmen.

THE GERMAN EMPIRE.

Boundaries.—On the *north* by the North Sea, Denmark, and the Baltic ; on the *south* by Switzerland and Austria ; on the *east* by Austria and Russia ; and on the *west* by France, Belgium, and Holland.

Extent.—The total *area* of the German Empire as now constituted is 212,000 square miles, or about three and a-half times that of England and Wales.

Coasts.—The total length of the coast-line is about 1,200 miles. There are numerous inlets, but few good harbours.

1. **Inlets.**—The principal *inlets* are the Jahde, estuaries of the Weser and Elbe, Gulf of Lübeck, Stettiner Haff, and Gulf of Danzig, with Frische Haff and Kurische Haff.

2. **Islands.**—The Frisian Islands, Norderney, &c., in the North Sea ; Rugen, &c., in the Baltic.

Natural Features.—Germany is for the most part level, but includes many detached groups of high ground within its southerly and westerly divisions.

1. **Mountains.**—The chief mountain-ranges are the *Vosges*, on the left bank ; and the *Schwarz Wald*, *Taunus*, and *Westerwald*, on the right bank of the Rhine ; *Böhmer Wald*, *Era Gebirge*, and *Riesen Gebirge*, on the Austrian frontiers ; and the *Harz Mountains*, *Teutoburger Wald*, *Vogelsberg*, and *Thüringer Wald*, between the basins of the Elbe and the Rhine.

2. **Rivers.**—The principal rivers are the *Rhine*, *Ems*, *Weser*, and *Elbe*, flowing into the North Sea ; the *Oder*, *Vistula*, and *Niemen*, flowing into the Baltic ; and the *Danube*, flowing into the Black Sea.

3. **Lakes.**—Lake Constance, or Bodensee, on the south ; Ammer See and Wurm See, König See and Chiem See, in Bavaria.

Climate.—The climate of Germany resembles, on the whole, that of Britain ; it is, however, somewhat colder, and the winters are more severe.

Productions.—The *forests* are extensive, and give shelter to numerous wild animals. The minerals include *coal*, with *iron* and other metals.

Inhabitants.—The total population of the German Empire was, according to the last census (1880), 45,194,000—an average of more than 200 persons to the square mile.

1. **Race and Language.**—Nearly 90 per cent. of the people are *Germans*, and the German language is almost universally spoken. There are about 2,500,000 Poles, and 500,000 Jews.

2. **Education.**—Education is general, and compulsory throughout the empire.

3. **Religion.**—The majority of the Prussians are *Protestants*, but south Germany is chiefly *Roman Catholic*.

Industry.—Germany in general is rather agricultural than manufacturing.

1. **Agriculture** employs three-fourths of the German population. Various *grains*, *flax*, and the *vine* are extensively grown.

2. **Manufactures.**—The *linen* manufacture is extensively pursued in Silesia; the *cotton*, *woollen*, and *silk* manufactures, with various works in *metal*, in the western half of the kingdom. Berlin is especially noted for its glass, porcelain, jewellery, and fancy goods in general.

3. **Commerce.**—The *imports* are cotton and woollen goods; iron, coals, hemp, tallow, &c., and colonial produce. The *exports* are corn, oxen, sheep, and horses; raw sugar, wool, timber, linen, and provisions. The trade of the Empire is under the control of the *Zollverein* or Customs League, which at present embraces all the German States, except Hamburg and Bremen.

Government.—By the constitution of April, 1871, all the German states “form an eternal union for the protection of the realm, and the care of the welfare of the German people.” The supreme direction of all affairs is in the hands of the King of Prussia, who is thus the Emperor of Germany.

Up to 1866, Germany was politically divided into numerous states, united into a body called the Germanic Confederation, but each of them with a government of its own. Austria ranked first amongst the German States in size and importance—Prussia second. The Austro-Prussian war of 1866 effected a material alteration in the affairs of Germany, and raised Prussia to the foremost place amongst the German States. The former Confederation was dissolved, and a new Confederation—consisting of the States of North Germany, with Prussia at their head, Austria being expressly excluded—formed in its place. This

was terminated by the issues of the Franco-German war of which resulted in the creation of a new German Empire, under editary headship of the royal house of Prussia. It involved, the transfer from France to Germany of the territory of Alsace, embracing an area of 5,600 square miles (nearly the size of ire), and a population of above a million and a half. Alsace is under the immediate administration of the Empire: each of er States comprehended within it has a distinct government wn.

sions.—The following table shows the states included present German Empire:—

| States. | | Capitals. |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| doms of | PRUSSIA | Berlin . |
| | BAVARIA | Munich. |
| | WURTEMBERG | Stuttgart. |
| | SAXONY | Dresden. |
| Grand chies of | BADEN | Carlsruhe. |
| | MECKLENBURG-SCHWERIN | Schwerin. |
| | HESSE | Darmstadt. |
| | OLDENBURG | Oldenburg |
| | SAXE-WEIMAR | Weimar. |
| hies of | MECKLENBURG-STRELITZ | New Strelitz. |
| | BRUNSWICK | Brunswick. |
| | SAXE-MEININGEN | Meiningen. |
| | ANHALT | Dessau. |
| | SAXE-COBURG-GOTHA | Gotha and Coburg. |
| | SAXE-ALTENBURG | Altenburg. |
| cipalities of | LIPPE-DETMOLD | Detmold. |
| | WALDECK | Arolsen. |
| | SCHWARZBURG-RUDOLSTADT | Rudolstadt. |
| | SCHWARZBURG-SONDERHAUSEN | Sonderhausen. |
| | REUSS (YOUNGER LINE) | Gera. |
| sCitiesof | SCHAUMBURG-LIPPE | Buckeburg. |
| | REUSS (ELDER LINE) | Greiz. |
| | HAMBURG. | |
| chsland of | LUBECK. | |
| | BREMEN. | |
| ALSACE-LORRAINE | | { Metz. Colmar. Strasburg. |

les the German provinces of Austria (which are described in a ling section), the little territories of **Luxemburg** and **Lichten-** not included within the Empire. The former, a Grand-duchy, hed to the kingdom of the Netherlands. Lichtenstein is a petty ality on the east border of Switzerland.

PRUSSIA.

Boundaries.—Prussia is bounded on the *north* by the Baltic Sea, Denmark, and the German Ocean ; on the *east* by Russia and Poland ; on the *south* by Austria, Saxony, various small German States, and France ; on the *west* by the kingdom of the Netherlands, and Belgium.

Extent.—Area, 137,000 square miles—nearly two and a half times that of England and Wales, or two-thirds that of the whole empire.

Inhabitants.—Prussia has a population of 27,260,000, of whom about 2,500,000 are *Poles* ; the remainder are *German*.

Government.—The kingdom of Prussia is an hereditary monarchy, in most respects under military forms of administration.

Most of the people are Protestants ; but there are numerous Roman Catholics and Jews. Education is in a highly advanced state.

Divisions and Towns.—The kingdom of Prussia includes the following provinces and towns :—

| Provinces. | Towns. | Provinces. | Towns. |
|------------------------|---|-----------------|---|
| Brandenburg . | Berlin, Potsdam, Frankfort-on-the-Oder. | Westphalia . . | Münster, Minden. |
| Prussia Proper | Königsberg, Danzig, Memel. | Hessen-Nassau | Frankfort-on-the-Main, Cassel, Hanau. |
| Pomerania . . | Stettin, Stralsund. | Rhine Province | Cologne, Aachen, Elberfeld, Crefeld, Coblenz, Treves. |
| Posen . . . | Posen. | | |
| Silesia . . . | Breslau. | | |
| Saxony . . . | Magdeburg, Halle, Erfurt. | Lauenberg . . | Lauenburg. |
| Schleswig-Holstein . . | Altona, Kiel, Tonning. | Jahde Territory | Wilhelmshafen. |
| Hanover . . | Hanover, Göttingen. | Hohenzollern . | Hechingen, Sigmaringen. |

BERLIN, the capital of the Prussian monarchy, and also of the new German Empire, stands on the river Spree, which joins the Havel, an affluent of the Elbe. *Breslau*, on the river Oder, is the second city of Prussia in point of size; *Cologne*, on the Rhine, comes third in point of population; and *Frankfort-on-the-Main*, fourth. *Danzig*, on the river Vistula, near its mouth, and *Stettin*, on the river Oder, are seats of great foreign trade. *Magdeburg*, on the Elbe, with *Barmen*, *Elberfeld*, *Dusseldorf*, *Coblenz*, and other towns on or near the Rhine, are large and flourishing seats of industry. *Altona*, on the Elbe, immediately adjoins Hamburg, and is virtually a suburb of that city.

SMALLER STATES OF THE GERMAN EMPIRE.

The principal of these are:—Saxony, Bavaria, Wurtemberg, Baden, Hesse, Alsace-Lorraine, and the Hanse Towns.

Saxony lies between Prussia and Bohemia, and is traversed by the river Elbe. Its chief towns are:—*Dresden* (the capital), which stands beside the river Elbe, and *Leipzig*, near the river Elster, a tributary of the Elbe.

Bavaria, in point of size, comes next to Prussia in the list of German States. Its chief town is *Munich* (the capital), which stands on the river Isar, an affluent of the Danube.

Wurtemberg lies to the west of Bavaria. Its capital, *Stuttgart*, lies near the left bank of the Neckar.

Baden lies on the east bank of the Rhine. Its capital, *Carlsruhe*, lies a few miles east of the Rhine.

Hesse includes two detached portions of territory. The chief cities are *Darmstadt* (the capital) and *Metz*.

Alsace-Lorraine lies between the Rhine and the Vosges Mountains. Part of the Moselle Valley is also within its limits. *Strasbourg*, the chief city of Alsace-Lorraine, lies near the left bank of the Rhine, beside the tributary stream of the Ill, and is of much note in history. *Mühlhausen*, to the southward (in the plain between the Rhine and the Vosges, and also on the Ill), has large cotton and other mills. *Metz* is a strong fortress and military arsenal, on the river Moselle.

The Hanse Towns.—The “free cities” of Hamburg, Lubeck, and Bremen, are among the most important commercial centres in the empire. *Hamburg* stands on the Elbe, sixty miles above its mouth. *Lubeck* stands on the little river Trave, which enters the Baltic. *Bremen* is on the river Weser, forty miles above its mouth.

THE AUSTRO-HUNGARIAN EMPIRE

Besides part of Germany the "AUSTRIAN EMPIRE" embraces several large countries of middle Europe, lying beyond the German limits.

Boundaries.—Austria-Hungary is bounded on the *north* by Saxony, Prussia, and Poland; on the *east* by Russia and Roumania; on the *south* by Roumania, Servia, the Adriatic Sea, and Italy; on the *west* by Switzerland and Bavaria.

Extent.—Including Bosnia and Herzegovina, the empire has a total area of 265,000 square miles, about four and a half times the area of England and Wales.

Coasts.—The only sea-coast of Austria is at the head of the Adriatic Sea. Total length, 500 miles.

1. **Capes.**—Puntas de Promontore, and Capo de Istria.
2. **Inlets.**—Gulfs of Trieste, Quarnero, and Cattaro.
3. **Islands.**—Numerous small islands along the coast.

Natural Features.—The Austro-Hungarian Empire includes a large portion of the *Alps*, and the whole of the *Carpathian Mountains*.

The *Alps* stretch over great part of its German provinces; the well-defined and elevated plain of Bohemia, to the north of the Danube, is enclosed by the Böhmer Wald, the Erz-gebirge, the Riesen-gebirge, and other mountains. The *Carpathians* extend round the north and east of Hungary. The chief part of Hungary is an extensive plain, watered by the Danube and its tributaries: Transylvania, to the south-eastward, is altogether a mountain-land. Dalmatia, which borders on the Adriatic, is traversed by the south-eastwardly extensions of the Alps.

Rivers.—The principal rivers are the *Danube* and the *Dniester*, flowing into the Black Sea; the *Adige*, flowing into the Adriatic Sea; the *Oder* and *Vistula*, flowing into the Baltic; and the *Elbe*, flowing into the North Sea.

The *Danube* is the great river of Austria. Of its tributaries the *Isa*, the *Drave*, the *Save*, and the *Theiss*,¹ are the most considerable.

¹ The *Theiss* is the largest strictly Austrian river.

Lakes.—Hungary contains the considerable *Lake of Balaton*, or the Platten See, the water of which is salt. The *Neusiedler See* has disappeared within recent years. In the Julian Alps is *Lake Zirknitz*, the waters of which occasionally disappear.

Climate.—The climate is generally dry, temperate, and healthy. Hungary, and the eastern provinces in general, are distinguished by extremes of heat and cold at opposite seasons. The warmest portions of the empire are those lying south of the Alps, towards the coast of the Adriatic.

Productions.—The natural productions are extremely varied. Every plant indigenous to Europe is found in Hungary alone, while the mineral wealth of the empire is said to be greater than that of any other European country.

The *vine* thrives in Hungary, and to the south of the Alps. The *fig*, *olive*, and *mulberry* are found on the shores of the Adriatic. The mineral produce is of high value; it includes *gold*, *silver*, *iron*, *lead*, *quicksilver*, and *salt*—the last in Galicia; the others chiefly in Hungary and the Illyrian provinces (Carinthia and Carniola).

Inhabitants.—The Austro-Hungarian empire has above 37,000,000 inhabitants—fewer than one-fourth of them Germans, the other three-fourths composed of Slaves, Poles, and other races.

1. **Education.**—Rather backward, but improving.

2. **Religion.**—The majority of the people are *Roman Catholics*, but there are numerous *Protestants* and members of the *Greek Church* in the Hungarian countries.

Industry.—The industry of Austria is chiefly agricultural. Manufactures are mostly pursued in the German provinces, where linen, woollen, and other fabrics are largely made. Bohemia is famous for its glass works.

Foreign commerce is restricted by the limited extent of sea-coast, which is confined to the Adriatic. *Trieste*, at the head of that sea, is the chief seat of maritime trade for the German provinces of the empire; *Fiume* for the Hungarian countries.

Government.—The administration is dual in form. The German provinces, with Galicia and Dalmatia, are under the immediate rule of the “reich,” or Empire; the other provinces are under the Hungarian crown. Both divisions of the monarchy now enjoy representative institutions.

The Empire, as a whole, has no nationality. The ruling power is German; but four-fifths of the subjects of Austria are of races differing in language, habits, and ideas, from the Germans, whose rule they reluctantly obey. This division of races is a source of political weakness to the empire, and necessitates the maintenance of a large standing army.

Divisions and Towns.—Austria includes the following:—

| <i>German Provinces.</i> | <i>Polish Province.</i> |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Austria Proper ... Vienna, Linz. | Galicia.....Lemberg, Cracow. |
| SalzburgSalzburg. | — |
| StyriaGraz. | <i>Hungarian Provinces.</i> |
| Carinthia.....Klagenfurt. | Hungary.....Pesth, Buda, Pres- |
| CarniolaLaybach. | burg. |
| The Littoral or } Trieste. | Transylvania...Kronstadt, Klan- |
| Coast-Region } | senburg. |
| TyrolInnsbruck. | SlavoniaPeterwardein. |
| BohemiaPrague. | CroatiaAgram, Fiume. |
| MoraviaBrünn, Olmütz. | Dalmatia.....Zara, Ragusa. |
| SilesiaTroppau. | BukowinaCzernowitch. |

VIENNA,¹ the capital of the empire, is a populous and commercial city on the south bank of the Danube. Prague, the chief city of Bohemia, ranks next to Vienna in size and population. PESTH and BUDA,² upon the opposite banks of the Danube, form together the largest city of Hungary, and the seat of government for the Hungarian provinces. Presburg, also on the Danube, was the former capital of Hungary. Cracow, on the Vistula, was the ecclesiastical capital of Poland while that unfortunate country maintained its place as an independent nation.

The provinces of Bosnia and Herzegovina, which formerly belonged to Turkey, were in 1878 occupied by Austria. They have an area of about 24,000 square miles, and a population of 1,200,000. The chief towns are Bosna-Serai, the capital, and Mostar, the chief town of Herzegovina.

¹ Population, 1,020,000.

² Total population, 250,000.

DENMARK.

Denmark consists of the peninsula of Jutland, and the neighbouring group of islands lying at the entrance of the Baltic. The largest of these islands is *Zealand*; the second in size is *Funen*. Of the others the principal are *Laaland*, *Bornholm* and *Falster*.

Boundaries.—The boundaries of Denmark are—on the *north*, the Skagerrack; on the *east*, the Kattegat, and the Baltic Sea; on the *west*, the North Sea; on the *south*, Germany.

Extent.—The present area of Denmark is 14,500 square miles—about one-fourth that of England and Wales.

Coasts.—The coast-line is very extensive, and is broken by numerous inlets.¹

Surface.—Denmark is a flat country.

The peninsula of Jutland forms an outlying portion of the great European plain, and exhibits merely gentle undulations of surface.

Rivers.—The rivers, though numerous, are all of small size.

Climate and Productions.—The climate of Denmark is somewhat colder than that of Britain, and is also moister. The chief sources of national wealth are found in the rich pastures, and in the fisheries carried on in the adjacent seas.

Inhabitants.—Denmark has nearly 2,000,000 inhabitants. The Danes, properly so called, are of Scandinavian race.

Education.—Widely diffused; numerous government schools.

Religion.—Nearly all the Danes are Lutherans.

Industry.—The industry of Denmark is chiefly agricultural.

Cattle, with *butter* and *cheese*, and other farm produce, are the most valuable productions. The Danes are good sailors, and carry on considerable maritime commerce.

Government.—Denmark forms an hereditary monarchy.

¹ One of these (the Lilm Fiord), which penetrates the eastern shore of the peninsula, stretches across its entire breadth, spreading out to a considerable magnitude. Its western end is connected with the North Sea by the Nyboron Canal.

Divisions and Towns.—The kingdom of Denmark includes the following divisions and towns :—

| Divisions. | Towns. |
|-------------------|-----------------------|
| The Islands | Copenhagen, Elsinore. |
| Jutland | Aalborg, Aarhus. |

COPENHAGEN,¹ the capital of Denmark, is on the east coast of the island of Zealand, beside the strait of the Sound. *Elsinore* lies some distance to the northward, on the same channel. *Aalborg* and *Aarhus*, the largest towns of Jutland, are both of small size.

The group of the **FAROE ISLANDS**, and the large island of **ICELAND**, belong to Denmark.

The **Faroe Islands** are situated in the North Atlantic, 200 miles to the north-westward of the Shetland Islands. Their inhabitants are chiefly engaged in fishing and fowling (that is, collecting the feathers and down of the numerous birds which frequent their steep and rugged cliffs). The chief town is *Thorshavn*.

Iceland is, next to Great Britain, the largest of European Islands. Its northern coasts just touch the border of the frigid zone. The climate is cold, and the surface generally barren—exhibiting a succession of volcanic mountains, and plains covered with lava. Several of the volcanoes are in occasional eruption—amongst them Mount Hekla, upwards of 5,000 feet high.

The most remarkable feature of Iceland, however, consists in its boiling springs, or *geysers*, situated near Mount Hekla. The geysers are fountains which at intervals throw up columns of hot water and spray. The largest of them—called the Great Geyser—throws up a column of water to the height of 80 feet.

Iceland has about 70,000 inhabitants. The chief town is *Reikiavik*, on the south-west coast.

Foreign Possessions.—The foreign settlements belonging to Denmark, besides Iceland, consist of the island of *Santa Cruz*, with *St. Thomas* and *St. John*, in the West Indies ; and a few stations on the west coast of *Greenland*, in North America.

¹ Population, 193,000.

SWEDEN AND NORWAY.

Boundaries.—Sweden and Norway form one kingdom, and are together known as Scandinavia. Its boundaries are, on the *north*, the Arctic Ocean ; on the *west*, the Atlantic ; on the *south*, the Skager-rack, the Kattegat, and the Baltic Sea ; on the *east*, the Baltic, the Gulf of Bothnia, and part of Russia.

Extent.—Sweden and Norway have an area of about 300,000 square miles, or more than five times that of England and Wales.

Coasts.—Sweden and Norway have a very extensive coastline, indented on the side of Norway by numerous narrow inlets, which are called *fiords*.

1. **Capes.**—The *North Cape* and the *Naze*, both belonging to Norway. The North Cape is the northernmost point of Europe.

2. **Islands.**—The *Lofoden Islands*, off the west coast of Norway ; the islands of *Gothland* and *Oland*, in the Baltic Sea, to the east of Sweden.

Surface.—The whole of Norway is a vast mountain region, which rises steeply above the waters of the Atlantic, and declines with a gradual slope to the eastward.

1. **Mountains.**—The highest portions bear the name of *Ymesfield*, and reach 8,500 feet above the sea. Sneehatten, in the *Dovrefield*, is upwards of 7,600 feet high.

2. **Rivers.**—The two principal rivers of Sweden are the *Dal* and the *Göta*. The Dal flows into the Gulf of Bothnia ; the Göta into the Kattegat. The longest river of Norway is the *Glommen* (400 miles long), which flows into Christiania Fiord.

3. **Lakes.**¹—The largest lakes in Sweden are *Wener* (the third largest lake in Europe), *Wetter*, and *Mälär*. The largest in Norway is *Lake Mjøsen*.

Climate.—The climate is colder than that of England, owing to the higher latitude.

The winters are long, but the cold is less severe than is elsewhere the case under similar parallels. The air of both countries is dry and healthy. More rain falls in Norway than in Sweden.

¹ In Norway alone the lakes are estimated to number 30,000, while in Sweden they cover nearly a tenth part of the total area of the country.

Productions.—Vast *forests*, and valuable ores of *copper* and *iron*, with other metals, form the natural sources of wealth in Sweden and Norway. The *fisheries* are also of high value.

Inhabitants.—Sweden has 4,500,000 inhabitants; Norway, 1,800,000. Both countries are thinly populated, comparatively to their size (Norway, 14 to the sq. m.; Sweden, 26).

Education.—Compulsory, and well advanced, especially in Sweden.

Religion.—The people of both countries are nearly all *Lutherans*.

Industry.—With both Swedes and Norwegians, the pursuits of industry are found chiefly in connexion with their mines, their forests, and their fisheries, the produce of which is extensively exported.

The Laplanders, who dwell in the extreme north of the peninsula, have their wealth in their herds of rein-deer, which furnish them with food and clothing.

Government.—Sweden and Norway form together a kingdom, under constitutional forms.

Divisions and Towns.—Sweden and Norway include the following divisions and towns:—

| IN SWEDEN. | | IN NORWAY. | |
|---------------|------------------------------|----------------|-------------------------|
| Divisions. | Towns. | Divisions. | Towns. |
| Sweden Proper | Stockholm, Upsala. | Sondenfields . | Christiania. |
| Gothland . . | Gottenborg, Carls- crona. | Nordenfields . | Bergen, Dron- theim. |
| Nordland . . | Sundsval. | Norlandens . | Hammerfest. |

STOCKHOLM,¹ the capital of the Swedish monarchy, lies at the entrance of Lake Mælar, near the coast of the Baltic. *Gottenborg*, at the mouth of the river Göta, is the second city of the kingdom in commercial importance. *Upsala* is the seat of a famous university.

CHRISTIANIA,² at the head of a long fiord called by its name, is the capital of Norway. *Hammerfest*, only a short way from the North Cape, is the most northerly town in Europe.

¹ Population, 173,000.

² Population, 116,000.

RUSSIA.

Boundaries.—European Russia is bounded on the *north* by the Arctic Ocean; on the *west* by the Baltic Sea, Prussia, and Austria; on the *south* by Roumania, the Black and Caspian Seas, and Mount Caucasus; on the *east* by Siberia or Asiatic Russia.

Extent.—European Russia includes upwards of 2,000,000 square miles—more than thirty-four times the area of England and Wales.

Coasts.—Russia possesses a coast-line upon four inland seas, the *Baltic*, *Black*, *Caspian*, and *White Seas*, besides part of the shores of the Arctic Ocean. The *Sea of Azov* is an arm of the Black Sea. The *Gulfs of Finland* and *Riga* are both arms of the Baltic.

Islands.—*Waigatz*, *Nova Zembla*, and *Spitzbergen*, in the Arctic Ocean; *Aland*, *Dago*, and *Oesel*, in the Baltic; and several small islands in the Caspian Sea.

Natural Features.—Russia is chiefly a level country. It consists principally of vast plains, which slope respectively towards the Baltic, Black, Caspian, and White Seas.

The most perfectly level of these plains are in the south-east, where they are called *steppes*. The steppe is an open plain, without trees, and generally without any perennial streams. Its surface, during the dry season of the year (the period of summer and autumn), is parched, arid, and often sandy, the vegetation burnt up by the intense heat; but at other times it exhibits a luxuriant expanse of grass, upon which the inhabitants pasture immense herds of horses and cattle.

1. **Mountains.**—The only mountains belonging to European Russia are the *Ural* and the *Caucasus*. The *Ural* are on the eastern, *Mount Caucasus* on part of the southern, border-line. The *Caucasus* is covered in its higher portions with perpetual snow. The *Valdai Hills*, in the centre, contain the sources of the *Volga* and *Dvina*.

2. **Rivers.**—The following are the principal rivers:—

- (1.) *Flowing into the Baltic Sea*, the *Neva*, *Dvina*, and *Niemen*.
- (2.) *Flowing into the Black Sea*, the *Dniester*, *Dnieper*, and *Kouban*.
- (3.) *Flowing into the Sea of Azov*, the *Don*.
- (4.) *Flowing into the Caspian Sea*, the *Volga* and *Ural*.
- (5.) *Flowing into the White Sea*, the *North Dvina* and *Onega*.
- (6.) *Flowing into the Arctic Ocean*, the *Petchora*.

3. **Lakes.**—The two largest are *Ladoga*¹ and *Onega*; next are *Saima*, *Peipous*, *Enara*, *Biéloc*, and *Ilmen*. In the Steppes, east of the Volga, is the salt lake of *Ielton*.

Climate.—Russia has great variety of climate, owing to its vast extent.

Its northerly portions are very cold, compared with Britain, but towards the south it becomes warmer. Throughout Russia, however, the winters are excessively severe, and the summers are intensely hot.

Productions.—The extensive forests of Russia furnish some of its most valuable productions—*timber*, *tar*, *pitch*, *turpentine*, and *potash*. Its mines of *iron* and *platinum*, within the Ural district, are also of high value.

Inhabitants.—European Russia has nearly 74,000,000 inhabitants, which is a small number compared to its vast size. It is, on the whole, a thinly-peopled country.

1. **Race.**—More than five-sixths of the entire population belong to the *Slavonic* race; the rest are Finns, Lapps, Tartars, &c.

2. **Language.**—The majority of the people speak the Russian language, of which there are three principal dialects.

3. **Religion.**—In religion the majority of the people of Russia are followers of the *Greek Church*.

4. **Education.**—Very backward, except in Finland. Numerous government schools, and six universities.

Industry.—Agriculture is the chief industrial pursuit.

Immense crops of the finest *wheat* are annually raised and exported. *Rye* is the grain chiefly consumed by the Russian population. *Hemp*, *tallow*, *hides*, and *bristles*, with *timber* and other forest produce, are likewise articles of export. Some metal works are carried on within the valleys of the Ural; but Russia is not, upon the whole, a manufacturing country.

Government.—Russia is an empire, under despotic government, the sovereign bearing the title of *Czar*, or *Emperor*.

Until within a recent date the great mass of the people were *serfs*, attached to the land, and rated as the property of their owners, like so many head of cattle. Serfdom was, however, abolished in 1861.

¹ *Lake Ladoga* is the largest lake in Europe. It is drained by the *Neva*.

Divisions and Towns.—Russia is divided, for administrative purposes, into governments and districts, which are generally grouped under eight great divisions.

These divisions, with their principal towns, are shown in the following table.

| Divisions. | Chief Towns. | Divisions. | Chief Towns. |
|-------------------|--|---|---|
| Baltic Provinces, | St. Petersburg. Cronstadt. Riga. | Little Russia, West Russia, Poland, | Kiev, Poltava. Wilna, Minsk. Warsaw, Kalisch. |
| Finland | Revel. Helsingfors, Abo. | South Russia, | Odessa, Nikolaev. Sevastopol. Kertch. |
| Great Russia, | Moscow, Toulá. Nijni-Novgorod. Smolensk. Archangel. | East Russia, | Kazan, Saratov. Astrakhan. Perm. |

ST. PETERSBURG,¹ the capital of the Russian Empire, stands at the mouth of the river Neva, which enters the Gulf of Finland. *Cronstadt*, situated on an island a few miles to the west, is the chief naval arsenal of the Russian empire. *Riga* is a great commercial city on the southern Dvina, a few miles above its mouth. *Helsingfors*, on the north side of the Gulf of Finland, is the provincial capital of Finland. *Archangel*, the chief port of northern Russia, is at the mouth of the northern Dvina.

Moscow, situated on the river Moskva (a tributary of the Volga), in the heart of the country, was the ancient capital of Russia. *Kiev*, on the Dneiper, is another city of ancient fame in Russian history. *Nijni-Novgorod*, at the junction of the Oka with the Volga, is an important centre of inland commerce.

Warsaw, the former capital of the Polish monarchy, is on the river Vistula, and is still a large city, though fallen from its former greatness.

Odessa, on the coast of the Black Sea, is a great seat of Russian commerce. *Nikolaev*, on the river Boug, is now the chief naval station of Russia in the Black Sea. *Sevastopol*, famous for its prolonged siege by the united armies of France and England in 1854-5, is on the south-west coast of the Crimea. *Kazan* is a large city to the east of the Volga, and is the centre of the trade with the Siberian provinces. *Astrakhan*, at the mouth of the Volga, commands the commerce of the Caspian Sea.

¹ St. Petersburg has 668,000 inhabitants, and ranks fifth among European capitals in order of population. It was founded by Peter the Great in 1702.

TURKEY IN EUROPE.

Boundaries.—Turkey in Europe is bounded on the *north* by Austria, Servia, and Roumania; on the *west* by the Adriatic and Mediterranean Seas; on the *south* by Greece, the waters of the Archipelago, and the Sea of Marmora; on the *east* by the Black Sea.

Extent.—The *area* of European Turkey is estimated at 128,000 square miles, or more than twice the size of England and Wales.

Coasts.—The Dardanelles and the Channel of Constantinople, which form (with the intervening Sea of Marmora) the entrance to the Black Sea, both belong to Turkey.

Islands.—Most of the islands in the Archipelago belong to the kingdom of Greece; but Candia (the ancient *Crete*) belongs to Turkey.

Mountains.—The chief mountains of Turkey are the *Balkan* and the range of *Mount Pindus*. The easternmost portion of the Alpine system, known by the name of the *Dinaric Alps*, is partly within Turkey, stretching along the coasts of the Adriatic.

Plains.—The extensive *plain of Bulgaria* is in the north of Turkey, within the valley of the Danube. The *plain of Thessaly*, east of Mount Pindus, is drained by the Salembria, and now belongs to Greece.

Rivers.—The chief river of European Turkey is the *Danube*. The *Maritza*, *Kara-su*, *Struma*, *Vardar*, and *Salembria*, all flow into the Archipelago.

Lakes.—The chief lakes are Skutari, Ochrida, and Ianina.

Climate.—Turkey has, in general, a warm and delightful climate—much warmer than that of England, especially in the provinces to the south of the Balkan mountains.

Productions.—The productions of the vegetable kingdom are rich and varied. The *vine* grows luxuriantly to the south of the *Balkans*, and the *fig*, *olive*, and *mulberry* are abundant, and the *orange* also thrives.

Divisions.—By the Treaty of Berlin, 1878, *Bulgaria* and *East Roumelia* were formed into self-governing tributary states; *Bosnia* and *Herzegovina* were handed over to Austria; *Roumania*, *Servia*, and *Montenegro* became independent states, and acquired additional territory.

TURKEY PROPER.

Turkey Proper extends south of Eastern Roumelia, Servia, and Montenegro, and has an area of about 60,000 square miles, scarcely half its area before the war with Russia. It is thus considerably larger than England and Wales.

Inhabitants.—In 1880, the actual population was estimated at 4,275,000. Before the Russo-Turkish War of 1877-8, European Turkey contained upwards of 8,000,000 inhabitants. The Turks themselves are followers of Mohammed, but the rest of the population of Turkey are members of the Greek Church.

Industry.—Industrial pursuits are at a low ebb in Turkey, for the country is badly governed. The culture of the soil is the most important occupation. *Fruits, olive-oil, wax, honey, wool, and morocco leather*, constitute the exportable produce. The total amount of the trade is considerable, and a large portion of it is carried on with Great Britain. The Greeks are the chief agents in this trade.

Government.—Turkey is a despotic monarchy, the sovereign of which is entitled the Sultan. The government of the various provinces is administered by pashas.

Divisions and Towns.—Turkey Proper includes:—

| Divisions. | Chief Towns. |
|----------------------------|--|
| 1. ROUMELIA | Constantinople. Adrianople, Gallipoli, Rodosto. Salonica, Drama, Seres. Ianina, Trikala, Berat. Prirend, Divra. Khania, Retima, Candia. |
| 2. ALBANIA | |
| 3. CANDIA OR CRETE | |

CONSTANTINOPLE (population, 700,000), the capital of the Turkish empire, is finely situated at the entrance of the channel called by its name, and hence commands the passage to and from the Black Sea. *Adrianople*, the second city in rank, is on the river Maritza. *Gallipoli* is on the Dardanelles; *Salonica*, at the north-west corner of the Archipelago, is a place of considerable trade.

BULGARIA.—The principality of Bulgaria extends from the Danube on the north, and Servia on the west, to the Balkans on the south, and the Black Sea on the east. Its *area* is estimated at 24,000 square miles, and its *population* at about 2,000,000.

The soil is generally fertile, and wheat is largely grown and exported. Cattle and sheep are also reared in great numbers.

The chief towns are **Sofia**, the capital; **Varna**, the port on the Black Sea; **Tirnova**, the old capital of the Bulgarian kingdom; and the famous fortresses of **Widdin**, **Eustchuck**, **Shumla**, and **Silistria**, memorable in connection with the war between Russia and Turkey.

EASTERN ROUMELIA.—This province has an *area* of 13,000 square miles, and a *population* estimated, in 1880, at 800,000.

The chief towns are **Philippopolis**, the capital, and **Bourgas**, the port. In the Balkans, on the north, is the famous *Skipka Pass*.

Eastern Roumelia has now a local self-government, but the supreme military and political authority is still in the hands of the Sultan.

BOSNIA AND HERZEGOVINA.—These provinces, which formerly belonged to Turkey, are now occupied by Austria, and are virtually annexed to the Austrian Empire.

MONTENEGRO.

This small state lies to the north-west of Turkey Proper, and has an *area* of 3,500 square miles, and a *population* of 300,000.

The capital is *Cettinje*, a small village with about 1,400 inhabitants. Its only ports are *Antivari* and *Dulcigno*.

SERVIA.

Servia includes the territory on either side of the *Morava*, and extends to Bulgaria on the east, and Bosnia on the west. The Danube forms the boundary on the north. Its *area* is 20,000 square miles, or rather less than half that of England and Wales.

Natural Features.—Servia is decidedly mountainous, being traversed in all directions by spurs of the *Dinaric Alps* and *Balkans*. It is well watered by numerous tributaries of the *Danube*, of which the largest is the *Morava*.

Climate.—Servia is subject to extremes of heat and cold.

Productions.—Immense herds of swine are reared, and form the principal article of export. *Grain, tobacco, silk, wine, and timber* are also exported.

Inhabitants.—The population is estimated at 1,670,000, nearly all of whom are Servians or Slavs.

Government.—Servia is an independent principality, governed by a Prince, aided by a Senate and a National Assembly.

Divisions and Towns.—Servia is divided into eighteen districts, which are named after the chief towns in each. The principal towns are **Belgrade**, the capital; and **Kruschevatz**, the ancient capital.

ROUMANIA.

Roumania occupies the plain between the Carpathians and the Danube. Its area is about 50,000 square miles, nearly equal to that of England.

Natural Features.—The western districts are hilly, but the greater part of the country is level, and well watered by the *Aluta, Prahova, Sereth*, and other tributaries of the Danube.

Climate and Productions.—The climate is strictly a continental one, *i.e.*, subject to extremes of heat and cold. The productions comprise the various kinds of *grain*, and immense herds of *cattle and sheep* are reared. Various minerals are abundant, but are not much worked.

Inhabitants.—Roumania contains about 5,300,000 inhabitants.

Religion.—The entire population, with the exception of 1,000,000 Catholics, Protestants, and Jews, are members of the *Greek Church*.

Industry.—Cattle and sheep rearing, and agriculture, are the chief industries. Wheat, wool, and timber are the chief articles of export. Manufactures on a limited scale in a few of the larger towns.

Government.—Roumania has recently¹ been erected into a kingdom. The government is a limited monarchy.

Divisions and Towns.—Wallachia is divided into eighteen, and Moldavia into thirteen, districts, each under a prefect or governor. The chief towns are **Bucharest**, the capital and seat of the government; **Jassy**, the chief town of Moldavia; and **Galatz**, the principal port. **Bralla** and **Ismail** are two other important ports on the Danube.

¹ March, 1881.

GREECE.

Boundaries.—Greece is bounded on the *north* by Turkey, on the *west* and *south* by the Mediterranean, on the *east* by the *Ægean Sea*.

Extent.—Including the Ionian Islands, and the territory recently acquired from Turkey, the total *area* of Greece is 25,000 square miles, about half that of England.

Coasts.—Greece has a very irregular outline, and includes a great number of gulfs and narrow channels.

Its southern portion forms a peninsula, called the *Morea*, which is united to the rest of the mainland by the *Isthmus of Corinth*. The *Gulf of Corinth* washes the north side of the Morea.

CAPES.—The two most important are—*Cape Matapan*, the southernmost point of the Morea, and *Cape Colonna*, the south point of Attica.

Islands.—A great part of Greece consists of islands.

1. The largest of these is *Negropont*, or Eubœa. Among those of smaller size are *Kuluri* (ancient Salamis), *Egina*, *Hydra*, *Speszia*, *Syra*, *Paros*, *Santorin*, and many others.

2. The *Ionian Islands* are situated to the west and south of Greece. They consist of seven principal islands, viz.:—*Corfu*, *Pazo*, *Santa Maura*, *Ithaca*, *Cephalonia*, *Zante*, and *Cerigo*. These islands enjoy a delightful climate, and are famous for their abundant produce of the small species of grape which furnishes the dried currants of commerce. The olive and the vine also flourish. The population numbers 250,000. These islands were formerly a dependent portion of the British Empire. The town of *Corfu* is the capital.

Mountains.—Every part of Greece is mountainous, and its highest elevations reach more than 8,000 feet above the sea.

The interior of the Morea (the ancient Peloponnesus) forms a high plain, or table-land, bordered by mountain-ranges. *Ota*, *Parnassus*, *Helicon*, and *Cithæron*, are among the most famous mountains of ancient Greece, and are still commonly referred to by those names.

Rivers.—There are no rivers of any size within the modern kingdom of Greece. The streams are merely mountain-torrents, the beds of which are often dry.

Climate.—The climate is warm and delightful, and vegetation is abundant in the valleys and lower grounds.

Productions.—The *wine, olive, orange, lemon, citron, fig*, and *mud-berry*, are among the native fruits. The *honey* of Attica is still celebrated, as it was in ancient times.

Inhabitants.—Greece has about 1,800,000 inhabitants.

1. **Race and Language.**—Three-fourths of the people are probably descended from the old *Greeks*, and their language closely resembles the ancient Greek tongue. The Greek race is found in every part of the Levant or Eastern Mediterranean.

2. **Religion and Education.**—The great majority of the people belong to the *Greek Church*. The Albanians or Arnauts are mostly Mahommedans. Public *education* is backward, but improving.

Industry.—The industry of the greater part of Greece is pastoral. *Currants* and other *fruits*, with *olive-oil, honey, tobacco*, and *corn*, are exported.

Government.—Modern Greece forms a kingdom, only established in 1832, previous to which the country had formed part of the Turkish dominions.

Divisions and Towns.—Greece contains the following :—

| Divisions. | Towns. |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Northern Greece | Athens, Livadia, Thebes, Lepanto. |
| The Morea | Nauplia, Corinth, Patras. |
| The Islands | Syra, Egripo (or Negropont), Corfu. |

ATHENS¹ is the capital of modern Greece. It is on the west side of the peninsula of Attica, five miles distant from the harbour of the Piræus, its port. The site of ancient Marathon is about twenty miles north-east of the capital. *Thebes* (the ancient metropolis of Bœotia) is to the north-west of Athens. The village of Kastri, further to the west, represents the ancient Delphi.

Nauplia and *Patras*, both situated within the Morea, are, next to Athens, the most important seats of Greek commerce. *Syra* is the chief commercial town among the Greek Islands.

¹ Population, 46,000 ; or including the Piræus, 52,000.

ITALY.

Boundaries.—Italy is bounded on the *north* by Austria and Switzerland; on the *west* by France; on the *south-west* and *south* by the Mediterranean Sea; on the *east* by the Adriatic Sea.

Italy is divided from France, Switzerland, and Austria by the Alps, and from Turkey and Greece by the Adriatic Sea.

Extent.—The total *area* of Italy, including the islands, is estimated at 110,000 square miles, or nearly twice that of England and Wales.

Coasts.—Very extensive, and includes a great number of good harbours. The principal capes, inlets, and straits are:—

1. **Capes.**—*Cape Spartivento*, the most southerly point of the Italian mainland; and *Cape Di Leuca* is the extreme south-east point.

2. **Inlets.**—The *Adriatic Sea* (the northerly part of which forms the Gulf of Venice), the *Gulf of Taranto*, the *Bay of Naples*, and the *Gulf of Genoa*—all of them arms of the Mediterranean.

3. **Straits.**—The *Strait of Otranto*, at the entrance of the Adriatic; the *Strait of Messina*,¹ between Italy and the island of Sicily; and the *Strait of Bonifacio*, between the islands of Sardinia and Corsica.

Islands.—The three large Italian islands are Sicily, Sardinia, and Corsica. The smaller islands are Malta, Gozo, Comino, the Lipari Islands, Elba, Ischia,² and several others of less note lying near the western coast.

Sicily is the largest island in the Mediterranean. The next in size is the mountainous island of **Sardinia**. **Corsica** belongs to France. The **Maltese Islands** have belonged to England since the year 1800. **Malta** is highly valued as a naval station. The chief town is *Valetta*.

Mountains.—The *Alps* encircle the north of Italy, dividing it from France, Switzerland, and Austria. The *Apennines* stretch, in a long chain, through the peninsular portion of Italy, branching off from the Alps near the head of the Gulf of Genoa.

¹ In the Strait of Messina are the once-dreaded whirlpool *Charybdis* and the rock *Scylla*.

² Most destructive earthquake, March, 1861.

All the higher portions of the *Alps* are covered with unmelting snow. *Mont Blanc*, which is the highest summit of the Alps, is on the border of Italy and France. The *Apennines* are much less elevated than the Alps. Their highest point is *Monte Corno*, or *Gran Sasso d'Italia*, "the great rock of Italy," in the Central or Neapolitan Apennines.

Volcanoes.—*Mount Vesuvius*, near the city of Naples, is an active volcano—the only one upon the European mainland. *Mount Etna*, in the island of Sicily, is also a volcano, and of much greater height. *Stromboli*, one of the Lipari Islands, is a volcano in constant activity.

Plains.—The *plain of Lombardy*, in the north of Italy, is among the most fertile portions of the country. The *coast plains*, especially in the south, are also exceedingly fertile.

Rivers.—The principal are the *Po*, *Adige*, *Arno*, and *Tiber*.

The most considerable of these rivers is the *Po*, which, like the *Adige*, rises in the Alps and flows into the Adriatic Sea. The *Arno* and *Tiber* rise in the Apennines, and flow into the Mediterranean. The *Tiber* is, historically, the most famous river in Europe.

Lakes.—The principal Italian lakes are *Maggiore*, *Lugano*, *Como*, and *Garda*, situated among the southern valleys of the Alps; with *Perugia*, *Bolsena*, and *Bracciano*, in the middle portion of the peninsula. *Albano* and *Nemi* are small lakes near Rome.

Climate.—Italy, like all the countries that border on the Mediterranean, has a warm and generally healthy climate, and a rich and luxuriant vegetation.

Productions.—The vegetation of Italy has the *vine*, *olive*, *fig*, and *mulberry*, among its fruits; and crops of the finest *wheat* are raised. The Neapolitan territory, in the south of Italy, yields the chief supply of *sulphur* to Britain and other countries. The island of *Elba* furnishes *iron-ore*, which has been worked from the times of the Romans.

Inhabitants.—Italy has above 28,000,000 inhabitants. Lombardy, in the north, is more thickly populated than any other part of Italy, and is, indeed, one of the most populous portions of Europe.

1. **Race and Language.**—Although the modern Italians are a distinct people, they have descended from numerous and widely-different races. The Italian language is derived from the Latin.

2. Religion and Education.—In religion, the Italians are of the Church of Rome. The higher classes are well educated; the great majority of the people are almost entirely illiterate.

Industry.—The industrial produce of Italy is very large in amount. Wheat, olive-oil, silk, straw plait, and so on, are its most important items.

Lombardy is especially distinguished for the culture of the silk reared for the purpose of supplying the food of the silkworm. Tuscany and Umbria are noted for their *olive-oil*; Tuscany also for hats and plait. The *silks* and *velvets* of Italy rival those of France. The silk manufacture gives extensive employment in most of Italy, and also to a less extent in other parts of the country. Coarse *woollen* and *linen goods* are made, both in Lombardy and elsewhere, and supply the ordinary clothing of the peasantry. The wealth of Italy consists principally in its raw produce; and its supply of manufactured articles, whether of luxury or necessity, is derived from abroad.

Government.—The kingdom of Italy is a constitutional monarchy, under an hereditary sovereign.

Prior to 1860, Italy was divided into several states (kingdoms &c.) One of these was the kingdom of Sardinia, to which, in accordance with the national will, the people of the other states allied themselves, and the previous ruler of Sardinia has become, in virtue of these events, the recognised sovereign over the whole country.

Divisions and Towns.—Italy includes the following

| Divisions. | Towns. |
|----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| ROMAN TERRITORY . . . | Rome, Civita Vecchia. |
| TUSCANY | Florence, Leghorn, Pisa. |
| PIEMONTE AND LIGURIA . . . | Turin, Alessandria, Genoa, &c. |
| LOMBARDY | Milan, Pavia, Bergamo. |
| VENETIA | Venice, Verona, Padua, Mantua. |
| EMILIA | Bologna, Ferrara, Modena, &c. |
| THE MARCHES | Ancona. |
| UMBRIA | Perugia, Spoleto. |
| CAMPANIA | Naples, Capua, Caserta, Salerno. |
| ABRUZZO AND MOLISE . . . | Chieti. |
| APULIA | Foggia, Bari, Brindisi, Taranto. |
| BASILICATA | Potenza. |
| CALABRIA | Reggio. |
| SICILY | Palermo, Messina, Catania, &c. |
| SARDINIA | Cagliari, Sassari. |

ROME (population 250,000), now the capital of Italy, is situated on the river Tiber, a few miles above its mouth. It is famous for its matchless treasures of art, as well as its cathedral church of St. Peter, and is the residence of the Pope. The area included within modern Rome is marked by the walls of the ancient city, which are still standing; but great portions of the included space is a mere wilderness of ruin. The Coliseum, which is beyond the populated portion of the city, is the most imposing amongst the many magnificent works of ancient art which belong to Rome. *Civita Vecchia* is the port of Rome.

Florence, one of the most beautiful of Italian cities, is situated on the bank of the river Arno, and is distinguished for its collections of works of art. *Leghorn*, on the Mediterranean coast, is the chief seaport of Tuscany. *Pisa*, on the Arno, a short distance above its mouth, has a great name in mediæval history, and is famed for its leaning tower. The island of Elba lies off the coast of Tuscany.

Turin, on the river Po, is the chief city of Piedmont, and, prior to 1864, the capital for a time of the Italian kingdom. *Alessandria* is a strongly fortified town, to the southward of Turin. *Genoa*, at the head of the gulf to which it gives name, is one of the most considerable of Italian seaports. *Spezia* is an important seaport and arsenal, to the south-east of Genoa. *Milan*, the chief city of northern Italy, lies in the heart of the Lombard plain, midway between the rivers Ticino and Adda, and beside the stream of the Olona—all three tributaries of the Po. *Pavia*, on the Ticino, is to the southward of Milan.

Venice lies on the shore of the Adriatic, amidst extensive lagoons. Canals divide its different quarters, but the city itself is now accessible by the railway, which, crossing the lagoons, connects it with Milan and other places in northern Italy. *Verona* is an inland city, on the river Adige, and is an important fortress. *Mantua* is on the Mincio.

Bologna, a large city, lies in the plain to the eastward of the Apennines. *Ferrara* is near the right bank of the Po. *Parma* and *Modena* are also situated within the plains between the Apennines and the Po—the former on the banks of a river called by its name. *Ancona*, on the Adriatic coast, is a flourishing seaport. *Perugia* is an inland town.

Naples (population 450,000), situated on the shore of the beautiful bay of that name, is the largest city in Italy. Mount Vesuvius is only a few miles distant from it, to the south-eastward. The disinterred city of Pompeii, buried eighteen centuries since, under the ashes ejected from the mountain, is beside the shore of the bay. *Taranto* is near the head of the gulf which intervenes between the two extreme peninsulas of southern Italy.

Palermo, the largest city of Sicily, is on the north coast of that island. *Messina* is at the north-eastern extremity of Sicily: *Marsala* at its opposite or western extremity. *Cagliari*, the chief city of Sardinia, is on the south-east coast of Sardinia.

SPAIN.

Boundaries.—Spain is bounded on the *north* by France and the Bay of Biscay; on the *west* by the Atlantic Ocean and the kingdom of Portugal; on the *south-west* by the Atlantic; on the *south* and *east* by the Mediterranean Sea.

Extent.—Spain is above three times larger than England and Wales, and nearly as large as France—its area being nearly 200,000 square miles.

Coasts.—The coast-line of Spain is 1,300 miles in length, of which 600 miles are formed by the Atlantic, and 700 miles by the Mediterranean. It is, however, much less varied than the coasts of Italy or Greece, and the Spanish peninsula has a more solid shape than belongs to either of these countries. The *Strait of Gibraltar*, which connects the Atlantic with the Mediterranean, washes the extreme southern coast of Spain.

Capes.—The principal are :—*Cape Ortegal*, the north-west point of Spain; *Cape Finisterre*, on the west coast; *Cape Trafalgar*, on the south-west coast; *Cape Tarifa*, the southernmost point of Spain, and of Europe; *Cape Creuse*, the eastern extremity of the Pyrenees.

Islands.—The *Balearic Islands*, in the Mediterranean, and the *Canaries*, in the Atlantic Ocean, off the coast of Africa, belong to Spain.

The *Balearic Islands* are five in number, viz., Majorca, Minorca, Iviza, Formentera, and Cabrera. The *Canary Islands* are situated in the Atlantic Ocean, about 60 miles off the west coast of Africa.

Natural Features.—The interior of Spain is a high table-land. The whole peninsula is crossed by mountain-chains, which have the general direction of east and west. These chains are—

1. The *Pyrenees*, on the borders of France and Spain.
2. The *Cantabrian Mountains*, extending west from the Pyrenees to Capes Ortegal and Finisterre.
3. The *Castilian Mountains*, *Mountains of Toledo*, and *Sierra Morena*, stretching across the interior of Spain.
4. *Sierra Nevada*, in the south, along the Mediterranean coast.

Rivers.—The chief rivers are the *Minho*, *Douro*, *Tagus*, *Guadiana*, and *Guadalquivir*, all of which flow west into the Atlantic; the *Ebro*, *Xucar*, and *Segura*, which flow east into the Mediterranean.

* * The Douro, Tagus, and Guadiana, have their lower courses through the kingdom of Portugal.

Climate.—The climate of Spain exhibits great varieties.

The north is temperate: the middle parts are liable to great extremes of heat and cold—parched in summer by intense heat, and piercingly cold in winter: the south and south-east are hot, like southern Europe in general.

Productions.—The natural productions of Spain are rich and varied.

1. The vegetation is equally various as the climate. In the north, upon the shores of the Bay of Biscay, the *fruits* common to the south of England flourish. In the south and south-east, along the Mediterranean coasts, the foliage is evergreen, and the fruits are such as belong to southern lands. The *orange*, *lemon*, *citron*, and *fig*, are here abundant; the *sugar-cane* thrives, and the rich foliage of the *banana* and other tropical fruits is seen beside the groves of *myrtle*, *oleander*, and *Indian fig*.

2. Spain has also valuable mines of *quicksilver*, *lead*, and other metals.

Inhabitants.—Spain is one of the least populous among European countries. Its population amounts to 16,600,000, an average of 85 persons to the square mile.

Race and Language.—The Spaniards are the descendants of the old Iberians, largely mixed, however, with other races. The Spanish language is of Latin origin.

Religion and Education.—The Spanish people are nearly all followers of the Church of Rome. Public education is very backward.

Industry.—The pursuits of industry are not generally in a flourishing state.

Sheep are reared in vast numbers on the interior plains. The *silk* manufacture is pursued, principally at Valencia. The chief articles of produce which Spain supplies are *wines*, *fruits* (raisins, oranges, figs, &c.), *wool*, *salt*, *barilla*, *quicksilver*, *lead*, and *cobalt*; with *leather*, *olive-oil*, and *cork*. The foreign trade carried on with France and England is considerable. The *sherry wines* so largely consumed in the latter country are the produce of the south-west of Spain, in the vicinity of Cadiz.

Government.—Spain is at present a kingdom : the long period of misgovernment under which the country has laboured, until within a recent time, has injured its resources and retarded its progress.

Divisions and Towns.—Spain is now divided into forty-nine provinces. But the older division into thirteen provinces—some of them formerly separate kingdoms—is more generally followed ; and (as in the case of France) the names of these provinces are inseparably mixed up with the historic records of the country.

The thirteen older provinces of Spain, with the chief towns in each, are as follows :—

| Provinces. | Towns. |
|-----------------------|---|
| NEW CASTILE | Madrid, Toledo, Cuidad-Real. |
| OLD CASTILE | Burgos, Santander. |
| LEON | Valladolid, Salamanca, Cuidad-Rodrigo. |
| ESTREMADURA | Badajos. |
| ANDALUSIA | Seville, Malaga, Granada, Cordova, Cadiz, Xeres, San Lucar. |
| MURCIA | Murcia, Cartagena. |
| VALENCIA | Valencia, Alicante. |
| CATALONIA | Barcelona, Tarragona. |
| ARAGON | Saragossa. |
| NAVARRRE | Pamplona. |
| BISCAY | Bilboa, St. Sebastian. |
| ASTURIAS | Oviedo. |
| GALICIA | Corunna, Santiago, Ferrol, Vigo. |

MADRID (population, 475,000), the capital of Spain, lies in the centre of the kingdom, upon the little stream of the Manzanares, a tributary of the Tagus, in the midst of an arid plain, which is upwards of 2,000 feet above the level of the sea.¹ *Toledo*, an ancient city to the south-west of Madrid, is on the Tagus. *Talavera*, also on the Tagus, lower down its stream, is famous for the victory gained in 1809 by the British over the French army. *Burgos*, the capital of Old Castile, is on the Arlanzon, one of the small tributaries of the Douro. *Santander* is a port on the Bay of Biscay. *Valladolid*, the chief city of Leon, and

¹ The royal palace of the Escorial, built by Philip II., is to the north-west of the capital, at the foot of the Mountains of Castile.

the former capital of the Spanish monarchy, is in the valley of the Douro. *Seville*, now chiefly noted for its extensive trade in oranges, stands beside the river Guadalquivir. At the mouth of that stream is *San Lucar*, the port whence (in 1519) Magellan sailed on the first voyage of circumnavigation round the globe. *Palos*, a small port to the westward, is yet more noteworthy in the annals of discovery: Columbus sailed thence (in 1492) on the great voyage in which he discovered the New World. *Cadiz*, one of the chief seaports of Spain, is on an island which immediately adjoins the Spanish coast. The town of *Xeres* (whence the name of sherry is derived) is in the midst of the wine district, to the north-east of Cadiz. *Cordova*, greatly decayed from its former splendour, is on the Guadalquivir. *Granada* stands in a beautiful plain at the northern foot of the Sierra Nevada. *Malaga* is a flourishing port on the southern coast. The town of *Murcia* is on the river Segura, on the eastern side of the kingdom: *Cartagena* is on the coast of the same province. *Alicant*, also on the Mediterranean coast, is to the northward. *Valencia*, still further north, is a short distance inland: it has flourishing silk manufactures and extensive trade. *Barcelona*, situated on the coast of Catalonia, commands the Mediterranean trade of Spain. *Saragossa*, the chief city of Aragon, on the river Ebro, is noteworthy for its memorable sieges in 1808-9, during the Peninsular war. *Santiago*, the chief city of Galicia, like many other of the cities of Spain, has greatly decayed from its former importance. *Corunna* and *Ferrol*, at the opposite extremities of an extensive bay, and *Vigo*, on a fine bay further south, are important seaports.

Colonies.—Spain possesses the following foreign dependencies—a mere fragment of those which, until within the last half-century, owned her sway:—

1. *In the West Indies*:—Cuba and Porto Rico.
2. *In the East Indies*:—The Philippine Islands.
3. *On the North coast of Africa*:—Ceuta, opposite to Gibraltar.

. The Canary Islands, off the west coast of Africa, are considered as an integral portion of the kingdom.

Gibraltar, in the extreme south of Spain, is a possession of the British Crown. It was captured by an English squadron in 1704, and has ever since remained a British possession.

The town of *Gibraltar* occupies the western declivity and base of a lofty rock, which advances a length of four miles into the sea, and terminates to the southward in Europa Point. A narrow and sandy isthmus connects this rock with the mainland of Spain. The natural strength of Gibraltar is increased by extensive fortifications, and its position at the entrance of the Mediterranean renders it of great importance as a naval station.

PORTUGAL

Boundaries.—Portugal is bounded on the *north* and the *east* by Spain; and on the *south* and the *west* by the Atlantic.

Extent.—Portugal has an area of 36,000 square miles, or nearly three-fifths that of England and Wales.

Coasts.—The coast-line of Portugal belongs wholly to the Atlantic, and is remarkably regular and unbroken.

1. **Capes.**—The principal are *Cape Roca*, the most westerly point of the European continent, and *Cape St. Vincent*, its south-western point.

2. **Inlets.**—The *Bay of Lisbon* and the *Bay of Setubal*.

Mountains.—The high grounds of Portugal are extensions of the Spanish mountain-chains. The highest are the *Serra d' Estrella*, to the northward of the Tagus.

Rivers.—The principal rivers of Portugal are the *Minho*, *Douro*, *Mondego*, *Tagus*, and *Guadiana*, all flowing into the Atlantic.

Only one of the number—the *Mondego*—is wholly Portuguese. The four others have the larger portion of their courses in Spain.

Climate.—The climate of Portugal is warm and equable. Lisbon, its capital, exhibits remarkably little variation of temperature throughout the year.

Productions.—The natural productions resemble those of the south and south-east coasts of Spain.

The *wine* and the *olive*, the *orange*, *lemon*, *citron*, *almond*, and *fig*, the *myrtle* and the *cork-tree*, abound. The mineral resources of the country comprehend *copper*, *lead*, and numerous other metals; very few of them, however, are worked.

Inhabitants.—The population of Portugal is about 4,800,000 exclusive of the colonies.

1. **Race and Language.**—The Portuguese are of the same origin as the Spaniards, and speak a dialect of the same language.

2. **Education and Religion.**—Public education is in a very backward state. The Roman Catholic religion is almost uniformly followed.

Industry.—Industry is in a backward condition.

The most important article of produce is *port wine*, and the foreign trade consists in the export of wine, with *lemons*, *almonds*, and other *fruits*. The valley of the Douro, above Oporto, constitutes the wine district. The chief ports are Lisbon and Oporto.

Government.—The kingdom of Portugal is an hereditary and limited monarchy.

Divisions and Towns.—Portugal includes the following:—

| Provinces. | Towns. | Provinces. | Towns. |
|----------------|------------------|-----------------|----------------|
| ESTREMADURA | Lisbon, Setubal. | TRAZ OS MONTES | Villa Real. |
| ALEMTEJO . . | Evora, Elvas. | ENTRE DOURO E | Oporto, Braga. |
| BEIRA ALTA . . | Coimbra. | MINHO . . . } | |
| BEIRA BAIXA . | Castello Branco. | ALGARVE . . . } | Faro, Tavira. |

LISBON and Oporto are the only two considerable cities of Portugal. Lisbon (population, 280,000), at the mouth of the river Tagus, is the capital, and Oporto, near the mouth of the Douro, is the seat of the wine trade.

* * The Azores and Madeira Islands are also considered parts of the home country, and are directly represented by deputies in the Portuguese Parliament.

1. The Azores are situated in the Atlantic Ocean, 800 miles west of the coast of Portugal. They consist of a group of nine islands, the largest of which are St. Michael and Terceira. The island of St. Michael furnishes great numbers of oranges, which (with some corn) are the chief articles of export. *Angra*, on Terceira, is the capital; but *Ponte Delgada*, on St. Michael, is commercially more important.

2. Madeira is a beautiful and fertile island, off the west coast of Africa. The *climate* of Madeira is particularly celebrated, and the *vegetation* is rich and luxuriant. The chief town of the island is *Funchal*, on the south coast. The small island of Porto Santo, to the eastward of Madeira, also belongs to Portugal.

Colonies.—The foreign possessions of Portugal comprehend the *Cape Verde Islands*; *Angola* and *Benguela*, on the west coast of Africa, with *St. Thomas* and *Prince's Islands* (in the Gulf of Guinea); *Mozambique* and other territories on the east side of the African continent; together with *Goa* (on the coast of India), *Macao* (in China), and part of the island of *Timor*, in the East Indies.

2. **Mountains**—The principal mountain-chains of Asia are :—

- (1) *Himalaya Mountains*, between India and Tibet.
- (2) *Hindu-Kush*, between Afghanistan and Turkestan.
- (3) *Altai Mountains*, between Mongolia and Siberia.
- (4) *Kuen-luen*, between Tibet and Chinese Turkestan.
- (5) *Thian-shan*, through Chinese Turkestan and Mongolia.
- (6) *Mountains of Armenia*, on the plateau of Armenia.
- (7) *Mount Taurus*, in Asia Minor.
- (8) *Mountains of Lebanon*, on the east coast of Syria.
- (9) *The Ghauts*, on the eastern and western coasts of India.

*. The highest of these chains is the *Himalaya*, all the upper portions of which rise above the line of perpetual snow. The most elevated of the Himalaya peaks is *Mount Everest*, which reaches 29,000 feet above the sea, and is the highest known mountain on the globe. This is nearly double the altitude of Mont Blanc, the highest of the Alps.

3. **Plains**—The chief plains are as follow :—

- (1) *The Plain of Siberia*, occupying all the north of Asia.
- (2) *The Plain of Turkestan*, extending south and east of Lake Aral.
- (3) *The Plain of China*, in the N.E. of China, along the Yellow Sea.
- (4) *The Plain of Tonquin*, in the N. of Anam, along the Gulf of Tonquin.
- (5) *The Plain of Siam*, at the head of the Gulf of Siam.
- (6) *The Plain of Pegu*, in Farther India, to the south of Burmah.
- (7) *The Plain of Hindustan*, the northerly portion of India proper.
- (8) *The Plain of Mesopotamia and Babylonia*, in Asiatic Turkey.

4. **Deserts**—Asia contains some extensive deserts, viz :—

- (1) *Desert of Gobi* or Shamo, in Mongolia (Chinese Empire).
- (2) *Indian Desert*, in India, between the Indus and Ganges.
- (3) *Deserts of Seistan and Makran*, to the south-west of Afghanistan.
- (4) *Great Salt Desert* (Dasht-i-kavir), in Persia.
- (5) *Desert of Mesopotamia*, between the Tigris and the Euphrates.
- (6) *Syrian Desert*, in the east of Syria, Asiatic Turkey.
- (7) *Desert of Arabia*, in the interior of Arabia.

5. **Rivers**—The principal rivers of Asia are :—

- (1) **Flowing into the Arctic Ocean** : the *Obi*, *Yenesai*, and *Lena*.
- (2) **Flowing into the Pacific Ocean** : the *Amoor*, *Hoang-ho*, *Yangtze-kiang*, *Choo-kiang* or Canton river, *Mekon*, and *Menam*.
- (3) **Flowing into the Indian Ocean** : the *Saluen*, *Irawady*, *Brasmapootra*, *Ganges*, *Mahanuddy*, *Godavery*, *Krishna*, *Cauvery*, and *Tapti*; the *Nerbudda*, *Indus*, *Tigris*, and *Euphrates*.

(4) **Flowing into the Caspian:** the *Kur*.

(5) **Flowing into the Sea of Aral:** the *Amu* or *Oxus*, and the *Syr* or *Azartes*.

(6) **Flowing into the Black Sea:** the *Kizil-Irmak* and the *Rion*.

(7) **Inland Rivers,** of which the principal are the *Helmund*, the *ordan*, and the *Tarim* or *Ergheu*.

. The longest river in Asia (and the longest in the Old World) is the *Yang-tze-kiang*, in China, which has a course of more than 3000 miles. The great rivers of Siberia—*Obi*, *Yeneset*, and *Lena*—come next in length, but they flow through a cold and barren region. The three chief rivers of India—the *Indus*, *Ganges*, and *Brahmapootra*—are among streams of the highest importance. The *Indus* is 1700 miles long, and the *Ganges* more than 1500 miles. The *Euphrates* and the *Tigris* are also important rivers.

6. **Lakes.**—The principal lakes of Asia are as follow:—

| | | | |
|------------------|------------|----------------------|------------------|
| Aral | Turkestan. | Tong-ting | China. |
| Baikal | Siberia. | Poyang | Do. |
| Balkash | Do. | Hamum | Persia. |
| Zaisang | Mongolia. | Urumiyah | Do. |
| Qubsa | Do. | Van | Turkish Armenia. |
| Lop-nor | Do. | Goukcha, or Sevan | Russian Armenia. |
| Koko-nor | Do. | Koj-hissar | Asia Minor. |
| Tengri-nor | Tibet. | Dead Sea | Syria. |
| Bouka-nor | Do. | Galilee, or Tiberias | Do. |
| Palte | Do. | | |

. The two largest lakes of Asia (if we except the Caspian Sea, which is partly European) are *Aral* and *Baikal*. *Lake Aral* is so large as to be sometimes called a sea, and, like the Caspian, consists of salt water. *Lake Baikal* is the largest fresh-water lake in the Old World.

Climate.—Asia comprehends a greater variety of climates than any other division of the globe. This results from its vast extent of land, and its great range of latitude.

1. The extreme south of the Asiatic continent nearly touches the equator, and its northernmost portions are within 12 degrees of the pole. Hence there are experienced, within different portions of its vast extent, every variety of temperature, from the burning heat of the tropics to the intensest cold of the frigid zone.

2. In general, the eastern parts of Asia are colder than the western, and they have greater extremes of heat and cold at opposite seasons; that is, they have hotter summers and colder winters. Similar extremes distinguish the high plains of Central Asia.

3. The quantity of rain that falls in most parts of Southern Asia is very great—vastly greater than is the case in any part of Europe. But it falls at particular seasons only, and within a brief space of time.

4. Three natural divisions, in respect of climate, may be marked out upon the map of Asia—1. A southern belt of countries, in which the air is hot and moist; 2. A middle belt, which is generally cold and dry, but with great extremes of summer and winter temperature; 3. A northerly zone, which is a region of intense and prolonged cold.

Productions.—The natural productions of Asia are varied and important.

1. **Metals and Minerals.**—Asia furnishes some of the most valued productions of the mineral kingdom, including the diamond and other gems (found in Borneo and others of the islands of the East Indies, and also in Continental India), and the precious metals :—

Gold is found in Siberia (Ural and Altai mountains), Indo-Chinese countries, China, and Japan. *Silver* and *lead* in Siberia and China. *Iron* and *copper* in southern and western Asia in general. *Tin*, in the island of Banca (East Indies). *Coal*, in India, China, Burmah, Labuan Island (near Borneo), Asia Minor, Syria.

2. **Vegetation.**—Many of the food-plants most extensively used were originally derived from this quarter of the globe.

(1) *Rice*, and probably *wheat*, among the cereals; the *date*, *fig*, *vine*, *plum*, *cherry*, *peach*, *apple*, *pomegranate*, *olive*, *mulberry*, *lime*, *walnut*, *almond*, *cocoa-nut*, *orange*, *lemon*, *citron*, and *banana*, amongst fruits—together with the *tea-plant* and various *spices*—are all native to the soil of Asia. The *sugar-cane*, *indigo*, *cotton*, and *hemp* plants are also natives of Asia. There are, besides, an immense variety of forest trees, as the *teak*, *ebony*, *iron-wood*, *sandal-wood*, *rosewood*, *cedar*, and many other valuable woods, besides abundant varieties of the *oak*, *birch*, *cypress*, and others.

(2) *Rice* is the chief food-plant of southern Asia, and is the prime support of life to the immense population of China and India. The fruit of the *date-palm* supplies a like place to the people of Arabia and other parts of south-western Asia. The *cocoa-nut* palm is characteristic of the islands of southern and south-eastern Asia, with the shores of the two Indian peninsulas. The *tea-plant* is a native of China and Japan, and scarcely reaches beyond their limits. The high plateaus of central Asia are distinguished chiefly by the abundance of their grasses: boundless pastures stretch through the whole middle belt of Asia, from the shores of the Caspian to the banks of the river Amoor.

3. Animals.—Among domesticated quadrupeds belonging to Asia are the *camel*, the *elephant*, the *horse*, and the *ox*. Among carnivorous quadrupeds, the *lion*, *tiger*, *leopard*, *hyena*, *wolf*, and *jackal*.

(1) The *camel* ranges from the coasts of the Red Sea to the extremity of the Gobi and the shores of Lake Baikal. The *elephant* belongs to the warm and watered regions in the south-east of the continent, including the two Indian peninsulas and the island of Ceylon. Animals belonging to the ox tribe, and also *antelopes*, are particularly numerous.

(2) The range of the *lion* is now restricted to the countries lying between the Euphrates and the Indian desert. The *tiger* frequents the woods and jungles through all southern and south-eastern Asia. The *hyena* and *jackal* belong chiefly to western Asia: the *wolf* to the colder districts of the north and west. Numerous fur-bearing animals are native to the extreme north of Asia—among them the *bear*, *glutton*, *badger*, *wolf*, *fox*, *lynx*, *pole-cat*, *weasel*, *ermine*, *marten*, *otter*, and *sable*.

Inhabitants.—The population of Asia comprehends at least half the human race, and probably numbers about 830,000,000. China alone is said to contain more than 300,000,000 of people, and India has upwards of 250,000,000.

The Chinese, the Indo-Chinese, and the Mongolian tribes belong to what is called the Mongol variety of the human race. They have a yellowish-brown (or olive) complexion; a broad and flattened face, with obliquely-set and deeply-sunk eyes (the inner corner slanting down towards the nose); lank and black hair, with little beard; a broad, square, and thick-set frame, with a stature considerably below that of Europeans. The Malays, who inhabit the Malay peninsula and the islands of the East Indian Archipelago, belong to a distinct stock of nations.

Divisions.—Asia is divided into the following countries:—

- | | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|------------------------|
| 1. Turkey in Asia. | 5. Afghanistan. | 9. Turkestan. |
| 2. Arabia. | 6. India. | 10. Asiatic Russia. |
| 3. Persia. | 7. Further India. | 11. Malay Archipelago. |
| 4. Beloochistan. | 8. Chinese Empire. | 12. Japan. |

. By far the larger portion of Asia is held by three powers, two of which are European. The *Russian* dominions embrace the whole of the northern part of the continent, a large portion of Central Asia, and the Caucasus. Under *British* control, direct or indirect, is the vast peninsula of India. The *Chinese* Empire comprises China Proper and the adjacent regions.

TURKEY IN ASIA.

Boundaries.—Turkey in Asia is bounded on the *north* by the Black Sea ; on the *west* and *south-west* by the Mediterranean ; on the *south* by the Arabian Desert ; and on the *east* by Persia and the Russian territory of Transcaucasia.

Extent.—The *area* is estimated at 700,000 square miles, or about twelve times greater than that of England and Wales.

Divisions.—Turkey in Asia comprehends three distinct regions :—(1) Asia Minor ; (2) Syria ; and (3) the countries on the Euphrates and Tigris.

I. ASIA MINOR is an extensive peninsula, enclosed on three sides by the Black Sea, the Sea of Marmora, the Archipelago, and the Mediterranean.

Coasts.—The *Dardanelles* and the *Channel of Constantinople* divide Turkey in Asia from European Turkey. On the west coast of Asia Minor are the *Gulfs of Mytilene, Smyrna, Samos, and Kos* ; on the south, the *Makri and Adalia* ; in the south-east (on the borders of Asia Minor and Syria), the *Gulf of Scanderoon*.

Islands.—Cyprus, Rhodes, Samo, Kio (or Chios), and Mytilene.

Surface.—The interior of Asia Minor is a high tableland. The principal mountains are :—

1. *Mount Taurus*, on the south side of Asia Minor.
2. *Mount Olympus*, in the north-west corner of Asia Minor.
3. *Mount Argæus*, on the interior table-land.

Rivers.—The largest river of Asia Minor is the *Kizil-Irmak*, which flows into the Black Sea.

II. SYRIA extends along the coast of the Mediterranean, from the Gulf of Scanderoon southward to the border of Egypt. The S.W. portion of Syria is the *Palestine* of sacred history.

Capes.—The chief headlands are *Cape Khanzir* and *Cape Carmel*. Cape Carmel is on the south side of the Bay of Acre.

Surface.—The mountains of Syria consist principally of two chains, which constitute the *Mount Lebanon* of the Bible, and were known to the Greeks and Romans by the names of Libanus and Anti-Libanus. Between the two is a narrow valley, through which the river Orontes flows.

Rivers.—The two chief rivers of Syria are the *Orontes* and the *Jordan*. The former enters the Mediterranean ; the latter flows south, and falls into the Dead Sea.

Lakes.—The principal are the *Dead Sea* and the *Lake of Tiberias*.

III. COUNTRIES ON THE EUPHRATES AND TIGRIS.—These comprehend a high table-land—the plateau of Armenia—and an extensive lowland plain.

Surface.—The plateau of Armenia is crossed by mountains whose highest summit, Mount Ararat, is 17,000 feet above the sea. Below the mountain region, to the south-eastward, are the plains of *Al-jezireh* and *Irak-Arabi*, through which the Euphrates and Tigris flow.

Rivers.—The *Euphrates* and *Tigris* are the chief rivers of this region. The Euphrates, which is 1700 miles long, is the most considerable river of western Asia. The Tigris joins the Euphrates about 100 miles above the Persian Gulf; the united stream bears locally the name of Shatt-el-Arab, or river of the Arabs.

Lakes.—The largest is *Lake Van*, which lies at an elevation of more than 5000 feet. It has no outlet, and consequently its waters are salt.

Climate.—The climate is generally warm, excepting on the upland plains and in the mountain regions.

Productions.—Among the natural productions are a variety of rich fruits and other valuable plants, and some minerals.

1. The *vine* grows luxuriantly in the watered valleys, and the *date-palm* flourishes on the borders of the desert. *Wheat, barley, rice, and maize*, with *tobacco, hemp, and flax*, are articles of culture.

2. The mineral produce includes *coal* (found on the north coast of Asia Minor, and also on the slopes of the Lebanon, upon the Syrian coast), together with ores of *iron, lead, and copper*.

Inhabitants.—The population amounts to 16,000,000.

1. **Race.**—Besides Turks—the ruling people—it includes Greeks, Syrians, Jews, Arabs, Armenians, Turkomauns, Kurds, Druses, &c.

2. **Religion.**—The Turks are followers of the Mohammedan religion. The Greeks, Armenians, and others of the population, are Christians.

Industry.—The pursuits of industry are generally at a low ebb. The bulk of the population are engaged in agriculture, which, however, is pursued in a very inefficient manner, and scanty harvests are of frequent occurrence.

The amount of foreign trade is considerable. It is carried on chiefly with Britain and other European countries, from various ports upon the coasts of Asia Minor and Syria; and with the countries to the eastward.

of Turkey by means of caravans which cross the Syrian and Arabian deserts. *Smyrna*, on the coast of the archipelago: *Trebizond*, on the Black Sea; and *Beyrout*, on the Syrian coast, are the principal seats of maritime trade. The cities of *Aleppo*, *Damascus*, and *Bagdad* are the chief centres of caravan traffic.

Government.—Turkey in Asia is under the same general government as European Turkey. Constantinople is the capital of the whole empire.

Divisions and Towns.—The principal towns in the three great divisions of Asiatic Turkey are shown in the following table:—

| <i>Divisions.</i> | <i>Chief Towns.</i> |
|----------------------------|--|
| ASIA MINOR..... | Smyrna, Brusa, Kutaya, Koniye, Trebizond, Adana, Tarsus. |
| SYRIA | Damascus, Aleppo, Homs, Hamah, Beyrout, Acre, Jerusalem, Gaza. |
| COUNTRIES ON THE EUPHRATES | Bagdad, Erzeroom, Diarbeker, Orfah, Mosul. |

* * Each of these divisions embraces numerous governments or pashaliks—so called from being under the rule of Pashas.

Smyrna is the largest city of Asia Minor, and the chief emporium for the commerce of the eastern Mediterranean. It is also of great historic fame, and was one of the seven churches of the Apocalypse. *Trebizond*, on the Black Sea, is also an important seaport. *Koniye*, in the interior of the peninsula, represents the ancient Iconium, and is interesting in connection with the history of St. Paul. *Tarsus* was the birthplace of that apostle.

Damascus, the largest city of Syria, stands in a fertile plain near the eastern foot of Anti-Lebanon, on the little river Barrada, (the Abana of Scripture). *Aleppo*, in the north of Syria, has declined from the importance it formerly possessed. *Beyrout* is the chief port on the Syrian coast. The ancient Tyre and Sidon—now insignificant fishing towns—are to the southward of Beyrout. *Acre* (the Acco or Ptolemais of Scripture, and the St. Jean d'Acre of the Crusaders) is further south.

The south-western portion of Syria embraces Palestine, or the Holy Land. The most important locality in Palestine is *Jerusalem*, the scene of our Saviour's sufferings, which stands on a rocky platform—enclosed on three sides by deep ravines—about midway between the Mediterranean and Dead Seas. *Bethlehem*, the birthplace of our Lord, is a village lying a few miles south of Jerusalem. *Hebron* is further south. *Jaffa*, on the coast, is the port of Jerusalem, and a place of some trade. It represents the ancient Joppa.

Nablous, the Shechem of Scripture, is to the north of Jerusalem. *Nazareth* is further north, and not far from the base of Mount Tabor. *Tiberias* is a small city lying on the western shore of the beautiful lake of Tiberias, or Sea of Galilee.

Bagdad, on the Tigris, is superior in size and importance to any other place in the eastern division of Asiatic Turkey. *Erzeroom* is an important city, situated near the source of the Euphrates, on a high plain, 6000 feet above the sea. *Mosul* is on the western or right bank of the Tigris.

Among the many ancient sites which belong to the lands watered by the Euphrates and Tigris, two attract especial notice. These are *Nineveh* and *Babylon*, the former capitals of the Assyrian empire. The remains of Nineveh are found upon the east bank of the Tigris, opposite Mosul. The ruins of Babylon lie upon either bank of the Euphrates, in the neighbourhood of the small modern town of Hillah.

ARABIA.

Boundaries.—Arabia is bounded on the *north* by Turkey in Asia, on the *west* by the Red Sea, on the *south* by the Gulf of Aden and the Arabian Sea, and on the *east* by the Gulf of Oman and the Persian Gulf.

Extent.—Its *area* is estimated at 1,200,000 square miles, or about twenty times greater than that of England and Wales.

Coasts.—(1) The *Red Sea* divides at its northern extremity into two gulfs—the Gulf of Suez and the Gulf of Abaka. The tract enclosed between them is the Sinai peninsula. The *Strait of Bab-el-Mandeb* connects the Red Sea with the Gulf of Aden and the Indian Ocean. (2) The *Persian Gulf* is connected by the *Strait of Ormuz* with the *Gulf of Oman*, which opens into the Indian Ocean.

Natural Features.—Arabia consists of high plateaux in the interior, bordered on three sides by mountain chains. Between the base of the mountains and the sea there is a low and narrow plain called the Tehama, which is hot and arid. The group of the Sinai mountains, in the north-west of Arabia, fills the small peninsula of that name, and reaches upwards of 9000 feet in height.

The interior plains of Arabia are mostly desert, and derive their partial verdure entirely from the rains. Arabia has no rivers. Springs occur in abundance within the mountain region, and also, at distant intervals, within the desert. The presence of a perennial supply of water within the wilderness diffuses verdure around, and creates an oasis.

Climate.—The climate is hot and dry, excepting in the higher parts of the mountain region.

The low belt of the Tehama is intensely hot and arid: rain seldom falls there, and only occurs at distant intervals over large portions of the interior plateau.

Productions.—The most fertile portion of Arabia is in the south-west, which was distinguished by the ancients as *Arabia Felix*, or the Happy Arabia.

The *vine*, *fig*, *peach*, *almond*, and many other fruits flourish in this region, and the *coffee* shrub is abundantly cultivated. The *date-palm* is found in every oasis of the Arabian wilderness.

Inhabitants.—Arabia is supposed to have 12,000,000 inhabitants, but nothing certain is known on this head.

The people of Arabia are divided between dwellers in towns and dwellers in the wilderness. The latter live in tents, and move their encampments from place to place. These wandering inhabitants of the desert are called *Bedouins*, of whom there are numerous tribes. Their wealth consists in their flocks and herds—sheep, camels, goats, and horses. They look with contempt upon the dwellers in towns, and rejoice in the freedom of the desert.

Religion.—Most of the people of Arabia profess *Mohammedanism*. Vast numbers of Mohammedans annually resort to the sacred cities of Mecca and Medina—the former the birthplace, and the latter the burial place of Mohammed.

Industry.—The industry of the Arabs is pastoral and commercial.

The traffic which passes through the country is considerable, and is carried on by means of *caravans*—that is, companies of persons who associate together for mutual protection in crossing the wilderness, consisting of merchants, guides, soldiers, and pilgrims. The camel is uniformly employed as a beast of burden, and is suited in a higher degree than any other animal for making the passage of the wilderness. The caravan traversing the desert with its train of camels is one of the most striking pictures of Oriental life.

Government.—The government common in Arabia is patriarchal in form. The Arabs are divided into different tribes, each one of which has its own head, or *sheikh*, who fills, in relation to the persons of whom the tribe consists, the place of the father of a family.

Arabia, as a whole, has never been subject to any single power, and at the present time (1881) is politically divided into eight territories, of which *El-Hejaz*, *Yemen*, and *El-Hassa* are subject to the Sultan of Turkey; the *Sinai* peninsula, included within the Egyptian dominions; *Hadramaut*, occupied by independent Bedouin tribes; *Oman*, subdivided into eight provinces, nominally subject to the Sultan of Muscat; *Nejd*, comprising the districts still under the ruler of Riad, and the recently established sultanate of *Jebel Shomer*, the most powerful of the native states of Arabia.

| Divisions. | Chief Towns. | Divisions. | Chief Towns. |
|----------------|--------------------|--------------|-----------------|
| SINAI REGION . | Tor, Akaba. | HADRAMAUT . | Makalla, Shehr. |
| EL-HEJAZ . . | Mecca, Medina. | OMAN | Muscat. |
| YEMEN . . . | Sana, Mocha, Aden. | NEJD | Riad. |
| EL-HASSA . . | Koweit. | JEBEL SHOMER | Hail. |

1. The Sinai peninsula has few inhabitants; it is a wilderness of rocks and mountains, alternating with arid plains and gravelly beds of torrents, destitute of water during three-fourths of the year. This region was the scene of the forty years' wandering of the Israelites. Mount Sinai, whence the law was delivered, is within the central and highest cluster of mountains, in the very heart of the peninsula.

2. The region of El-Hejaz is the Holy Land of the Mohammedans. *Mecca* was the birthplace, and *Medina* the burialplace, of the Arabian prophet, Mohammed. *Sana*, the chief city of Yemen, is in the heart of the coffee district. *Aden*, on the south coast of Arabia—not far from the entrance of the Red Sea—belongs to England. Aden is an important station on the line of communication between England and India, by way of the Mediterranean and the Red Sea.

3. *Muscat*, on the opposite coast of the peninsula, is a flourishing seaport, the chief emporium of Arabian commerce. Hadramaut (on the south coast) and El-Hassa (along the shore of the Persian Gulf) contain no towns of any importance. Of the interior towns, the principal are:—*Riad*, the capital of the Wahabee empire, and *Hail*, the chief town of the sultanate of Jebel Shomer.

PERSIA.

Boundaries.—Persia is bounded on the *north* by the Caspian Sea and the deserts of Turkestan; on the *east* by Afghanistan and Beloochistan; on the *south* by the Persian Gulf; and on the *west* by Turkey in Asia.

Extent.—Its *area* is nearly 650,000 square miles—above ten times greater than England and Wales.

Coasts.—The Caspian Sea on the north, the Persian Gulf and Gulf of Oman on the south, wash the shores of Persia.

Islands.—The principal are *Ormuz*, *Kishm*, and *Karak*, in the Persian Gulf.

Natural Features.—The interior of Persia is a high plateau, bordered on three sides—the north, west, and south—by mountain-chains. These mountains divide the elevated interior from the low country which lies along the Caspian Sea, the Persian Gulf, and the banks of the Tigris.

1. **Mountains.**—The *Zagros Mountains*, along the western border, reach upwards of 11,000 feet in height; *Mount Demavend*, towards the Caspian, is still more elevated, being upwards of 18,000 feet high.

2. **Deserts.**—In the interior of Persia there is an extensive and arid region called the *Great Salt Desert*. South-east of the Great Desert is a smaller arid and marshy tract called the *Desert of Kerman*.

3. **Rivers.**—The *Kerkhah* and the *Kerun*, both of which join the Euphrates; and the *Safed-rud*, which flows into the Caspian. The Euphrates forms part of the south-west border of Persia, and the *Amu* is on its north-west frontier.

4. **Lakes.**—The largest lake is *Urumiyah*, in the north-west, the water of which is intensely salt. *Lake Bakktegan* or *Niris*, in the south, is also salt. *Lake Seistan* is on the eastern border.

Climate.—The interior plateau is distinguished by intensely hot summers, and correspondingly severe winters. The low plains along the coast are intensely hot.

Productions.—The mountain-valleys of Persia, situated within the successive terraces through which its interior is reached, are its most favoured regions, both in climate and produce. The *vine*, the *fig*, the *water-melon*, and the *peach* abound there, and a carpet of wild flowers covers the ground. The interior plateau is generally arid and unproductive.

Inhabitants.—Persia has about 4,500,000 inhabitants.

About a fourth of the population of Persia are a people called *Illyats*, whose habits are pastoral. Camels, horses, and sheep form their wealth.

Education and Religion.—In no other country in Asia, except China, is education so generally diffused. The people are mostly *Mohammedans* in religion.

Industry.—Most of the people are engaged in *agricultural* and *pastoral* pursuits.

Rice, barley, wheat, and various fruits are largely grown, and the *mulberry, vine*, and *cotton plant* are extensively cultivated. There are few manufactures. Those of *carpets, shawls, embroidered silks, sabres*, and *firearms* are the most important.

Commerce.—The commerce, carried on by caravans, is considerable, native produce and manufactures being exchanged for Indian and European goods. The internal trade centres at *Tabreez*.

Government.—The sovereign of Persia is styled the Shah, and, as in all Oriental countries, exercises despotic power.

Divisions and Towns.—Persia is divided into twenty provinces. The following are the most important :—

| Provinces. | Towns. | Provinces. | Towns. |
|--------------|-----------------------------|--------------|------------------|
| IRAK-AJEMI . | Teheran, Ispahan, Hamsadan. | FARS . . . | Shiraz, Bushire. |
| AZERBIJAN . | Tabreez. | LARISTAN . . | Iar. |
| GILAN . . . | Resht. | KERMAN . . | Kerman, Gombnun. |
| MAZANDERAN . | Saree, Balfrush. | LURISTAN . . | Khorramabad. |
| KHORASAN . | Mesched. | KHUZISTAN . | Shuster, Dizful. |
| | | SEISTAN . . | Sekuha. |

TEHERAN is the modern capital of Persia, but *Ispahan* is of larger size, and of greater commercial importance. Ispahan, however, has declined from the splendour which it once possessed. *Bushire*, on the Persian Gulf, is the chief seat of the foreign commerce of Persia. *Gombnun* lies at the entrance of the gulf, on its northern shore. Near Gombnun is the island of Ormuz, which gives its name to the strait that connects the Persian Gulf with the Indian Ocean. *Mohammerah*, at the junction of the river Kerun with the Euphrates, is a place of growing commercial importance. A few miles south-west of *Dizful* is the mound of Sus, which marks the site of the ancient city of *Susa*, the Shushan of Scripture (Dan. viii. 2).

BELUCHISTAN.

Boundaries.—Beluchistan is bounded by Afghanistan on the north, Persia on the west, and British India on the east.

Extent.—The area of Beluchistan is estimated at 106,800 square miles, of which 60,000 belong to Persia.

Natural Features.—The chief physical features are :—

1. **Mountains.**—An irregular chain of mountains extends from east to west. To the east the central plateau is bounded by the *Hala Mountains*, which extends north to the Bolan Pass.

2. **Rivers.**—The only permanent river is the *Bampur*, in western Beluchistan. The *Dasht* and the *Atmini* enter the Arabian sea.

Climate.—The climate exhibits extremes of heat and cold, being intensely hot in summer, while in winter the cold is severe, snow lying on the ground for several months.

Productions.—Several of the most useful minerals and metals are known to exist, but are not much worked. The vegetation resembles that of Persia.

Inhabitants.—The people of Beluchistan number probably 2,000,000, and belong to two entirely different races—the *Beluchis* and the *Brahuis*.

Religion.—Both the Beluchis and Brahuis are followers of the Mohammedan religion ; the former belong to the orthodox Sunni sect, the latter to the sect of Omar.

Industry.—The bulk of the people are nomads, depending entirely on their flocks and herds. There are no manufactures of any importance. The trade is carried on by caravans, there being no roads or navigable rivers.

Government.—The western tribes are entirely independent, but those in the eastern provinces are nominally subject to the Khan of Khelat.

Divisions and Towns.—The country is loosely divided into seven provinces, viz., *Khelat*, *Sarawan*, *Kach-Gundava*, in the north-east ; *Kohistan*, in the north-west ; and *Jalawan*, *Luz*, and *Mekran*, in the south.

Khelat, the nominal capital of Beluchistan, is the summer residence of the Khan, who removes to *Gundava*, in the Indus valley, in the winter. *Bampur* is the capital, and *Chabar* the port of Persian Beluchistan.

AFGHANISTAN.

Boundaries.—Afghanistan is bounded on the *north* by Turkestan, on the *east* by British India, on the *south* by Beluchistan, and on the *west* by Persia.

Extent.—Its *area* is estimated at about 250,000 square miles, or about four times that of England and Wales.

Natural Features.—Lord Lawrence pithily describes Afghanistan as a “country of mountain-ranges, narrow defiles, and valleys limited in extent.”

1. **Mountains.**—A vast range extends along the northern border, and is called the *Hindu-Kush*, or Hindu-Koh. The *Suliman Mountains*, on the east, divide Afghanistan from the low plains that border the Indus; their highest summit, called Takht-i-Suliman, is 12,000 feet high.

2. **Passes.**—The principal passes are :—The *Khyber Pass*, the *Kurum Pass*, the *Gomul Pass*, and the *Bolan Pass*.

3. **Rivers.**—The chief rivers are :—The *Cabul*, which drains the north-east valleys, flows into the Indus at Attock. The *Helmund* and its tributaries, of which the principal is the Argandab, drains central Afghanistan, and flows into the lake of Seistan.

4. **Lakes.**—The only considerable lakes are the *Lake of Seistan* or *Hamum*, in the south-west; and the intensely salt *Lake Abistada*.

Climate and Productions.—The climate of both these countries is distinguished by intense extremes of heat and cold. The natural productions are like those of Persia, and the ground yields abundance of fruits and grain wherever water is sufficiently plentiful.

Inhabitants.—The population is estimated at about 5,000,000, consisting of over 400 different tribes, of whom the *Ghilzais* and *Duranis* are the most powerful.

The Afghans generally are a bold and hardy race of mountaineers, warlike and hospitable, but treacherous and faithless.

Religion.—Mohammedanism: the Afghans proper belonging to the *Sunnie* sect, but the Hazaras and other tribes to the *Shiite* sect.

Industry.—The Afghans are mostly devoted to pastoral pursuits. A considerable amount of transit trade passes through the country.

Government.—Afghanistan has for a long time been in a most unsettled state. The Ameer of Cabul is nominally acknowledged as sovereign, and is recognised by the British Government as ruler of Afghanistan.

Divisions and Towns.—The principal divisions are Herat in the west, Cabul in the centre, and Candahar in the south.

The chief towns are *Cabul*, in the north-east, the capital and residence of the Ameer; *Candahar*, the largest town in south Afghanistan; and *Herat*, in the north-west.

INDIA.

Boundaries.—The Himalaya Mountains bound India on the *north*; Burmah and the Bay of Bengal on the *east*; Afghanistan, Beluchistan, and the Indian Ocean on the *west*. To the *south* it terminates in Cape Comorin, a conspicuous headland which fronts the waters of the Indian Ocean.

Extent.—India embraces an area of nearly 1,500,000 square miles, a magnitude twelve times greater than that of the British Isles, and which exceeds by upwards of twenty-five times the area of England and Wales.

Coasts.—Regular and unbroken, and in many parts extremely dangerous to approach.

1. **Capes.**—Cape Monze and Diu Head on the west, Cape Comorin on the south, and Calimere Point on the east.

2. **Inlets.**—The Gulf of Cutch or Kach, leading into the *Rann of Cutch*, and the Gulf of Cambay, on the west; and, on the south, the Gulf of Manaar.

Islands.—The principal islands are *Ceylon*, and the *Laccadive, Maldivé, and Nicobar Islands*.

1. The large island of *Ceylon*, lying to the south of India, belongs to Britain, and forms a distinct colony. Ceylon is 25,700 square miles in area, or about three-fourths the size of Ireland. The interior of the island is a high mountain region, the loftiest summits of which exceed 8000 feet; a broad and fertile belt of lowland extends around the coast. The most characteristic products of the island are the *cinnamon-plant* and the *cocoa-nut palm*. *Coffee* is also largely grown. Ceylon has nearly two and a half millions of inhabitants. These are called the

Singalese ; they differ in some respects from the people of the Indian mainland, and are worshippers of Buddha. The chief town is *Colombo*, on the western coast. *Trincomalee*, a flourishing seaport, is on the north-east side of the island. *Kandy*, formerly the native capital, is in the interior.

2. The groups of the *Laccadive* and *Maldivé Islands* lie in the Indian Ocean, to the south-west of India. The cocoa-nut is the chief article of produce in either group. The *Andaman Islands* are in the eastern part of the Bay of Bengal. The *Nicobar Islands* lie to the south-east of the Andaman Islands.

Natural Features.—The chief natural features of India are the vast range of the Himalayas, which rise abruptly from the great plain of Hindustan, watered by the Indus and Ganges. South of this plain are a series of tablelands, crossed by several considerable chains, and bounded on the east and west by the Ghauts, between which and the sea is a narrow plain.

India thus embraces two great divisions—the north, which is the extensive lowland plain of *Hindustan* ; and the centre and south, forming the plateau of the *Deccan*.

1. **Mountains.**—The chief mountain-chains of India are the *Himalaya*, the *Western* and *Eastern Ghauts*, and the *Vindhya Mountains*.

(1.) The *Himalaya Mountains* stretch in a well-defined line along the northern border of India, dividing that country from the tableland of Tibet. Their highest summit is Mount Everest, 29,000 feet, the highest elevation on the globe.

(2.) The *Western Ghauts* extend along the Malabar coast of India, close to the shores of the Indian Ocean. Their highest summits do not exceed 8000 feet. The detached portions of high ground which extend along the eastern side of the peninsula are called the *Eastern Ghauts*.

(3.) The *Vindhya Mountains* lie in the direction of east and west, along the north side of the peninsular portion of India. Their height is moderate, seldom exceeding 3000 feet.

2. **Tablelands.**—The principal tablelands are :—

- (1.) The *Northern Tableland*, or plateau of Malwa and Bundelkhand.
- (2.) The *Southern Tableland*, or the *Deccan*.

3. **Plains.**—The principal plains are —

(1.) The *Great Plain of Northern India* is naturally divided into the “Plain of the Ganges” and the “Plain of the Indus.”

(2.) The *Eastern and Western Coast Plains* lie between the Ghauts and the sea.

4. **Rivers.**—The principal rivers are:—(a) The Bhramaputra, Ganges, Mahanuddy, Godavery, Krishna, and Cauvery, flowing into the *Bay of Bengal*. (b) The Indus, Nerbudda, and Tapti, flowing into the *Arabian Sea*.

(1.) The *Ganges* rises on the south slope of the Himalayas, and flows through the great plain into the Bay of Bengal, after a course of 1500 miles.

(2.) The *Indus* rises in the tableland of Tibet, and flows through Cashmere, the Punjab, and Scinde, entering the Arabian Sea by numerous mouths after a total course of 1700 miles.

Climate.—The climate of India is hot, excepting in the hill regions, where a cool temperature results from altitude above the sea. These elevated tracts are accordingly resorted to for sanitary purposes.

The changes of the Indian seasons are from rain to drought, and the reverse. These changes are connected with the *monsoons*, or periodical winds of the Indian Ocean and neighbouring lands. The eastern side of India is generally hotter and more arid than the western coast.

Productions.—The natural productions are rich and varied.

1. The *gold* and *gems* for which India is traditionally celebrated are of less real value than the *coal* and *iron* which are extensively diffused through large portions of the country. *Tin*, *copper*, and other metals also occur.

2. India supplies all, or nearly all, the *fruits* that belong to southern Asia in general. Vast forests of *teak* and other trees clothe the seaward face of the Ghats, and forests extend from the plains of northern India far up the declivities of the Himalaya. The least productive part of India is the region known as the great Indian Desert, and the neighbouring tract entitled the Runn of Cutch.

Inhabitants.—In 1881 India had upwards of 250,000,000 inhabitants: the great bulk of whom are subjects of Britain, and the remainder, though under various native sovereignties, are virtually under the controlling power of Britain.

1. **Race.**—The great mass of the people of India belong to the *Hinds* race—the various families of which, however, exhibit many points of difference. The inhabitants of the provinces that border on the lower Ganges are of small stature and slender frame: those of the more inland provinces are a people of larger proportions and greater strength. There are, besides, settled in various parts of India, and intermingled

with the Hindoo population, descendants of *Arabs, Armenians, Afghans, Turks, and Abyssinians*; together with *Parsees*,¹ *Jews*, and people of various European nations (principally British).

2. **Religion.**—The Hindoos are uniformly followers of the *Brahminical* religion. Among their most characteristic social usages is the division into *castes*. Those of the native population not of Hindu race are principally *Mohammedans*.

Industry.—The industry of India is chiefly agricultural, but there are also some important native manufactures.

1. *Rice* is the article of food most extensively consumed by the great mass of the population. The culture of the *poppy*—for the purpose of extracting *opium*—is extensively pursued within the valley of the Ganges, and also on the plateau of Malwa. *Indigo, cotton, sugar, coffee, tea*, and the *mulberry*, are the objects of culture in various parts of India.

2. Fine *silk* and *cotton* fabrics, with shawls and various articles of ornamental attire, constitute the chief produce of Indian manufacturing skill. But the import of manufactured goods (principally from Britain), and the export of raw produce—chiefly *opium*,² *indigo, cotton, rice*, and *tea*—are the distinguishing features of Indian commerce.

Government.—Three-fifths of the whole vast region lying between the Himalaya Mountains and Cape Comorin, come under the appellation of British India, and are subject to the direct rule of authorities appointed by the British Crown. The remainder is divided between various native states, of which there are a vast number (many hundreds in all), attached to Britain by various ties, but all more or less dependent upon British power.

Prior to the year 1858 all the provinces of British India that are situate on the mainland were under the rule of the *East India Company*—subject only to a limited control on the part of the Crown. But in that year the political functions of the company were terminated by parliament, and the whole of their vast dominions brought under the direct authority of the British Crown. The Queen of England assumed the title of *Empress of India* by an Act proclaimed at Delhi before the princes of India on January 1, 1877.

¹ The Parsees, who are almost confined to the city of Bombay, are descended from the ancient fire-worshippers of Persia.

² The opium is supplied to China.

Divisions.—India is politically divided into (1) British Possessions, (2) Native States, (3) Foreign Possessions.

I. BRITISH POSSESSIONS.

The territories under direct British rule were formerly divided into the three presidencies of Bengal, Madras, Bombay. The *present* divisions under direct British rule are :—

| Province. | Capital. | Province. | Capital. |
|-----------------------------|------------|----------------------------|----------|
| 1. BENGAL | Calcutta. | 5. BRITISH BURMAH | Rangoon |
| 2. N.-WEST PROVINCES | Allahabad. | 6. ASSAM | Gowahati |
| 3. OUDE | Lucknow. | 7. BOMBAY | Bombay |
| 4. PUNJAB | Lahore. | 8. MADRAS | Madras |
| 5. CENTRAL PROVINCES | Nagpore. | | |

1. **Bengal** includes the lower portion of the Ganges and Brahmaputra valleys, and the former province of Cuttack, at the mouth of the Mahanuddy. The principal towns in Bengal are :—*Calcutta* (population 895,000), the capital of British India, on the east bank of the Hooghly (the principal arm of the Ganges), at a distance of a hundred miles from the sea ; *Moorshedabad*, also on the Hooghly ; *Patna*, on the Ganges ; and *Cuttack*, on an arm of the Mahanuddy.

2. **North-West Provinces and Oude** now (1881) form one province. The North-West Provinces embrace the upper portion of the Ganges valley, and enclose Oude on all sides but the north. The principal towns are :—*Allahabad*, at the junction of the Jumna and Ganges ; *Benares*, on the north bank of the Ganges (two of the largest among inland cities of India) ; *Cawnpore*, on the Ganges ; *Agra*, on the Jumna ; *Hurdwar*, on the Ganges ; *Lucknow* (the capital of Oude) ; and *Goomtee*, one of the affluents of the Ganges.

3. **The Punjab** embraces the north-western part of the great plain of India, and is so called from the “five rivers” which water it. The principal towns are :—*Lahore*, the capital, on the river Ravee ; *Delhi*, one of the five tributaries of the Indus ; *Amritsar*, on the Jumna ; *Mooltan*, on the river Chenab ; *Peshawur*, near the entrance to the Khyber Pass ; *Simla*, which is much resorted to for sanitary purposes.

4. **The Central Provinces** include the districts between the courses of the Nerbudda and the Mahanuddy. The principal towns are *Jubbulpore*, the capital, and *Nagpore*.

5. **British Burmah** is described under “Further India.”

6. **Assam** was included in the province of Bengal until 1874. It is chiefly famous for its tea plantations. The only considerable town is *Gowhatty*, the capital, on the left bank of the Brahmaputra.

7. The **Bombay Presidency** lies wholly on the western side of India. The large province of *Scinde*, which extends over both banks of the lower Indus, forms part of this presidency. The principal towns are *Bombay* (645,000 inhabitants), the capital of the presidency, situated on the island of Bombay, which closely adjoins the coast. *Surat*, at the mouth of the Tapti river. *Baroche*, on the Nerbudda. In Scinde is the rising port of *Kurachee*, and *Hyderabad*, on the Indus.

8. **Madras Presidency** embraces a large part of central and southern India. Its principal towns are *Madras* (397,000 inhabitants), the capital of the presidency, on the Coromandel coast. *Masulipatam*, near the mouth of the Krishna. *Tranquebar*, a seaport near the mouth of the river Cauvery; *Arcot*, *Tanjore*, *Trichinopoly*, and *Madura* are inland cities; *Calicut*, *Cananore*, and *Mangalore* are flourishing seaports. *Ootacamund* is a sanitary station in the Nilgherrie Hills.

II. NATIVE STATES.

The Native States of India (which number upwards of 460) have a total area of nearly 600,000 square miles, and a population of about 55,000,000.

1. Of the *Dependent Native States*, the most important are :—
Cashmere, Sikhim, Travancore, Cochin, Cutch, and Guzerat.

(1) **Cashmere** includes the celebrated valley of that name, which is watered by the river Jelum. The capital is *Srinagar*. Its breed of goats affords the fine hair which is woven into the celebrated Cashmere shawls.

(2) **Sikhim**.—This small state is traversed by the lofty ranges of the Himalaya. The native rajah resides at *Tumlong*.

(3) **Travancore** extends along the south-western coast of India. The capital is *Trivandrum*. The greater portion of this state is covered with forests, but the coast districts are well cultivated and productive.

(4) **Cochin** is a small province north of Travancore, and is bounded on the east by the Cardamum Mountains. The capital is *Cochin*.

(5) **Cutch** is a small peninsula on the west coast. The *Rao*, as the sovereign is termed, resides at *Bhoof*, an inland town.

(6) **Guzerat** is the general name for the territories east and west of the Gulf of Cambay. The sovereign (styled Guicowar) resides at *Baroda*.

2. Of the *Tributary Native States*, the principal are those of *Rajpootana*, Central India, *Hyderabad*, and *Mysore*.

(1) *Rajpootana*, in the north-west of India, embraces numerous small states, of which the most important are *Oodeypore* (Oudipur), *Jeypore* (Jaipur), and *Jhodpore*. Between *Rajpootana* and the *Sutlej* lies the native state of *Bhawulpore*.

(2) The states of *Central India* lie between *Rajpootana* and the Central Provinces. The largest state is that of *Gwalior*, governed by the Maharajah Sindia; but the British agent resides at *Indore*, the capital of the dominions of the Maharajah Holkar. *Bhopal* is a small Mohammedan state in the *Vindhya Mountains*.

(3) *Hyderabad*, the most extensive of the native states, is under a ruler who bears the title of *Nizam*, and is wholly inland. The capital, *Hyderabad* (Haiderabad), on a tributary of the *Krishna*, is strongly fortified. Not far from *Aurungabad*, in the north-west, is the little town of *Assaye*, where the Duke of Wellington (then Sir Arthur Wellesley) gained one of his splendid victories.

(4) The state of *Mysore* is also inland. The present capital, *Mysore*, lies about 20 miles south-east of the former capital, *Seringapatam*.

3. The most important *Independent States* are *Nepaul* and *Bhotan*, on the southern slopes of the *Himalaya*.

(1) *Nepaul* is separated from the British provinces by the pestilential *Terai* (Tarai). *Khatamandu* is the capital.

(2) *Bhotan* (Bhutan or Bhootan) lies between the main ridge of the *Himalayas* and the British provinces. The chief town is *Tas-siudon*.

III. FOREIGN POSSESSIONS.

Two other European nations possess a few and comparatively unimportant stations in India. These are *France* and *Portugal*.

1. To the *FRENCH* belong:—*Pondicherry*, a seaport town lying to the south of *Madras*; *Mahé*, on the *Malabar* coast (a few miles north of *Calicut*); and *Chandernagore*, a small town on the *Hooghly River*, north of *Calcutta*.

2. The *PORTUGUESE* possessions consist of *Goa*, a small territory on the west coast of India; the port of *Damaun*, to the north of *Bombay*; and the town and port of *Diu*, further north. The city of *Goa* was once a splendid emporium of commerce—the chief mart of the *East* Indies, but its importance has wholly passed away.

INDO-CHINESE COUNTRIES.

FURTHER INDIA (or the Indo-Chinese Peninsula) forms the south-easterly division of the Asiatic continent. It extends from the Bay of Bengal on the west to the China Sea on the east. To the south it stretches into the smaller Malay Peninsula.

Boundaries.—Further India is bounded on the *north* by China, on the *east* and *south* by the China Sea, and on the *west* by the Strait of Malacca and the Bay of Bengal.

Extent.—The total *area* of Further India is about 870,000 square miles, or nearly 15 times that of England and Wales.

Coasts.—Very extensive, and possessing several fine harbours.

The most noticeable features are the two great *Gulfs of Tonquin* and *Siam*, on the east, and the *Gulf of Martaban*, on the west. The two headlands are *Cape Negrais*, on the west, and *Cape Romania*, principal on the south. The *Strait of Malacca* divides Malaya from the island of Sumatra, and forms the chief entrance to the China Sea.

Natural Features.—Ranges of high ground, running north and south, with long river-valleys between, form the characteristic features of these countries.

Plains.—There are three extensive plains—the *Plain of Pegu*, the *Plain of Siam*, and the *Plain of Tonquin*.

Rivers.—The Indo-Chinese peninsula has four great rivers:—The *Irawaddy* and *Saluen*, flowing into the Gulf of Martaban; the *Menam*,¹ into the Gulf of Siam; and the *Mekon*, into the China Sea.

Climate and Productions.—The climate is hot, and often unhealthy in the low grounds. The rains are abundant, and the change from the dry to the rainy season depends (as in India proper) upon the monsoons. The vegetable productions are of the highest value. There are various native woods, with drugs, spices, and gums. Gold is worked.

¹ The Menam, like the Nile, annually overflows its banks, and thus fertilises the country through which it flows.

Inhabitants.—The entire region, perhaps, comprehend about 36,000,000 of inhabitants.

Race and Language.—The Indo-Chinese people bear more resemblance to the Chinese than to the Hindus. They are more robust frame than the Hindus, but short in stature. The various languages spoken are monosyllabic.

Religion.—The Buddhist worship uniformly prevails, and its rites are celebrated with great pomp and display.

Industry.—The industry is chiefly agricultural.

Rice, sugar, the mulberry, cotton, indigo, and tobacco are largely grown: rice is the principal article of food. Extensive commercial intercourse is maintained with China.

Government.—The native governments of all these countries are despotic. British Burmah is under a Chief Commissioner.

Divisions.—The political divisions of the peninsula, their chief towns, are shown in the following table:—

| Divisions. | Chief Towns. |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| BRITISH BURMAH | Rangoon, Akyab, Moulmein, Pr |
| THE EMPIRE OF BURMAH | Mandalay, Amarapoora, Ava, B |
| THE KINGDOM OF SIAM | Bangkok, Ayuthia, Paknam |
| THE EMPIRE OF ANAM | Hue, Kesho or Ha-noi. |
| THE KINGDOM OF CAMBODIA . . . | Udong, Pnomping, Kampot. |
| FRENCH COCHIN-CHINA | Saigon, Mitho. |
| INDEPENDENT MALAY STATES . . | Perak, Pahang, Johore. |
| THE STRAITS SETTLEMENTS . . | Singapore, George Town, Malacca |

1. **British Burmah** consists of three provinces acquired from the mah. The total population in 1881 was 3,700,000.

(1.) **ARACAN**, a narrow strip of country lying along the east of the Bay of Bengal; capital, *Akyab*.

(2.) **PRAGU** includes the delta of the Irawady. Chief towns *Rangoon* on one of the branches of the Irawady, the capital of the province, and *Prome*, on the left bank of the river.

(3.) The provinces known by the general name of **TENASSERIM** are along the eastern side of the Gulf of Martaban. The town of *Moulmein* near the mouth of the river Saluen, is an important seat of trade.

2. **Burmah** occupies the north-western portion of the peninsula and contains about 4,000,000 inhabitants. The chief towns are *Mandalay*, the capital, on the left bank of the Irawady, *Amarapoora* *Ava*, also on the banks of the same river.

3. **Siam** occupies the central part of the peninsula. Its population is estimated at 5,000,000. The capital of Siam is the busy port of *Bangkok*, on the left bank of the Menam, about twenty miles from the sea. The former capital was *Ayuthia*.

4. **Anam**, or Cochín-China proper, lies on the eastern side of the Indo-Chinese peninsula. Its population is estimated at upwards of 20,000,000. The chief towns are *Kesho*, the capital of the province of Tonquin, and *Hue*, the capital of the empire.

5. **Cambodia** was formerly an extensive and powerful kingdom, but its total population is now only about 900,000. The chief towns are *Udong*, the present capital, *Pnompeng*, and *Kampot*.

6. **French Cochín-China** lies south of Cambodia and Anam. Its population is estimated at 1,600,000. *Saigon* is the capital. The other chief towns are *Bathak* and *Vinlong*.

7. **Independent Malacca** comprises the southern portion of the Malay peninsula. Of the independent Malay States the principal are those of *Perak* and *Salangore* on the west coast, and *Pahang* and *Johore* on the east.

8. **The Straits Settlements** form a distinct dependency of the British Crown. They comprise Penang, Wellesley Province, Malacca, and Singapore, and have a total population of about 350,000.

(1.) **PENANG**, or Prince of Wales Island, lies off the west coast of the Malay peninsula.

(2.) **WELLESLEY PROVINCE** is on the mainland, opposite Penang.

(3.) **MALACCA**, the largest as well as the oldest of the Straits Settlements, comprises a strip of territory on the west coast of the peninsula.

(4.) **SINGAPORE**, at the extremity of the Malay peninsula, contains the town of *Singapore*, which is one of the great marts of British commerce in the East.

THE CHINESE EMPIRE.

The **CHINESE EMPIRE** extends over more than a fourth part of Asia, and comprises an area which is considerably greater than that of all Europe. But China itself constitutes a portion only of this widely-extended dominion. Tibet, Mongolia, parts of Manchooria and Turkestan, with Corea, besides China proper, are included within the Chinese Empire.

I. CHINA.

Boundaries.—China proper is bounded on the *north* by Mongolia ; on the *east* by the Pacific Ocean ; on the *south* by the China Sea, Anam, and Siam ; on the *west* by Burmah and Tibet.¹

Extent.—The area of China is estimated at 1,500,000 square miles, which exceeds by 26 times the area of England and Wales, or nearly 12 times that of the British Islands.

Coasts.—Extensive, and skirted by a vast number of islands and islets. The principal features are :—

1. **Inlets.**—The *Gulfs of Pe-che-lee* and *Tonquin* ; the *Bay of Corea*.

2. **Straits.**—The *Straits of Pe-che-lee*, *Formosa*, and *Hainan*.

Islands.—The principal islands are *Formosa*, *Hainan*, *Hong-Kong*, and *Chusan*.

The island of HONG-KONG, near the south coast of China, was ceded to Britain in 1842. It is hilly, watered, and tolerably healthy, and its situation off the entrance of the Canton river gives it importance. Its area is thirty-six square miles. Its population numbers above 140,000. The chief town is *Victoria*.

Mountains.—The greater part of China is mountainous. Its western and south-western provinces, especially, are covered with high mountain-chains, the peaks of which rise above the snow-line.

Plains.—The north-eastern part of China is a fertile lowland, known as the *Plain of China*. This plain constitutes the most populous portion of the Chinese empire.

Rivers.—The four most important rivers of China are the *Yang-tze-kiang*, *Hwang-ho*, *Si-kiang*, and *Pei-ho*. The *Yang-tze-kiang*² flows into the East Sea of China ; the *Hwang-ho* and *Pei-ho*, into the Gulf of Pe-che-lee ; and the *Si-kiang*, into the China Sea.

Lakes.—Several large lakes adjoin the course of the *Yang-tze-kiang*.

¹ China is divided from Mongolia by the *Great Wall of China*, a vast rampart of earth, 10 to 30 feet high, which runs over hill and valley for 1200 miles.

² The *Yang-tze* is the longest river in the Old World, and is navigable for many hundred miles inland.

Climate.—The climate of China is on the whole temperate, but has great extremes of heat and cold at opposite seasons. This is the case throughout central and western Asia.

Productions.—Of natural productions, the *tea-plant* is the most remarkable. It grows principally in the south-eastern provinces, and is cultivated with great diligence. The *orange*, *mulberry*, *jujube*, *sugarcane*, and *cotton-plant*, are native to China. The mineral produce includes *coal*, *iron*, *copper*, *lead*, *tin*, and *mercury*, together with the *precious metals*, in the south-western provinces.

Population and Industry.—The population is said to number upwards of 360,000,000—about a fourth part of the human race.

China abounds in large cities, and the banks of its rivers and canals literally swarm with human life.

Education and Religion.—Education is general, and well advanced. The prevailing religion is Buddhism.

Industry.—The industry of China embraces alike agriculture, manufactures, and commerce.

1. Tillage is pursued with the utmost diligence, and *rice* constitutes the staff of life to the vast majority of the population.

2. *Silk* and *cotton* goods are largely made. The *earthenware* (or porcelain) manufacture is a characteristic branch of Chinese industry.

3. The trade of China is of immense amount. China supplies the rest of the world with *tea*, which is exported in vast quantities to Britain, France, the United States, and other countries. *Silk* and *nankeen* stuffs, *porcelain*, with lacquered and other ornamental wares, are also exported. *Opium*, which is consumed by nearly all classes of the Chinese, is imported from British India. *Pepper*, *betel-nut*, *sandalwood*, *ebony*, *ivory*, *mother-of-pearl*, and various articles of food, are obtained from the islands of the Indian Archipelago.

Government.—The government is a strict despotism, based throughout upon the assumption of parental authority.

The emperor is the recognised viceroy of heaven, and the father of his subjects; through all the gradations of society the same notion of parental authority is carefully preserved. The *mandarins* (as the various civil and military officers are styled by Europeans) constitute nine different ranks, each subordinate to the one above it.

Divisions and Towns.—China is divided into eighteen provinces. It contains a great number of large cities, among the most important of which are :—

Pekin, on the Pei-ho, in the north-east.

Nankin, on the Yang-tsze, 200 miles above its mouth.

Shang-hai, on the coast, at the entrance of the Yang-tze.

Han-kow, on the Yang-tsze, 600 miles above its mouth.

Hangchow, on the coast, at the S. termination of the Grand Canal.

Amoy, on an island adjoining the east coast.

Canton, at the head of an estuary of the Choo-kiang.

Fu-chow, near the east coast, on the river Min.

PEKIN is the capital of the Chinese empire, and is said to have 1,500,000 inhabitants. *Nankin* ranks as the second city of China. *Shang-hai* and *Canton* are the chief emporiums of the tea-trade. *Macao*, at the entrance of the Canton river, belongs to Portugal.

II.—TIBET is an inland country, situated west of China. It is a vast plateau, 15,000 feet above the sea, bordered on the south by the stupendous range of the Himalayas, and crossed by other mountain-chains.

1. The climate of Tibet is cold ; the habits of its people chiefly pastoral. Vast herds of sheep, mountain-goats, and buffaloes are reared. The fine hair of the Tibetan goat is woven into the shawls of Cashmere, which are extensively exported.

2. Though under the recognised sovereignty of China, the real ruler of Tibet is the Grand Lama, the high priest of the Buddhist religion—of which the town of *Lassa*, the capital of the country, is the head seat.

3. *Ladakh* and *Little Tibet* are mountainous regions lying to the westward of Tibet proper. *Ladakh* is now held by the British.

III.—MONGOLIA embraces a vast portion of Central Asia, stretching from Tibet and China to the border of Siberia, and including the desert tract of the Gobi, or Shamo. It is chiefly a pastoral region, inhabited by nomad tribes, whose wealth consists of their flocks and herds, who pass a large portion of their time on horseback, and are of warlike habits.

There are few towns of any importance within this territory. *Ulsai-sutai* and *Kobdo*—the latter within the valley of a considerable river called the *Jabkan*—are among the most considerable.

IV.—**MANCHOORIA** is an extensive country lying east of Mongolia, limited on the east by the Pacific Ocean, and on the north by the river Amoor ; a large portion of it, however, is now under Russian dominion.

Leaotong, the southernmost province of Manchooria, is inhabited principally by Chinese, and is therefore regarded as an integral part of China proper. Its capital is *Moukden* (or Shinyang), a place of considerable size, lying one hundred miles inland from the Gulf of Leaotong.

V.—**COREA** is a peninsula which stretches southward from Manchooria between the Yellow Sea and the Japan Sea.

Its inhabitants are exceedingly jealous of intercourse with strangers, and the interior is unknown to Europeans.

The capital is **King-ki-tao**, in the interior of the country.

TURKESTAN.

TURKESTAN is an extensive region of Central Asia, reaching from the western limits of Mongolia nearly to the shores of the Caspian Sea.

Extent.—The total *area* of this vast region is probably not far short of a million and a half square miles, or about twenty-five times that of England and Wales.

Natural Features.—This region includes two great slopes—one of them, Eastern Turkestan, watered by the river *Tarim* (or Erghen), which loses its waters in the lake of *Lop*; the other, Western Turkestan, inclining towards the Caspian and the Sea of Aral, and including the river valleys of the *Amu* and *Syr* (Oxus and Jaxartes), both of which flow into the Aral. Between the two slopes is the high mountain region of the *Pamir steppe*, with the Beloortagh and other lofty chains, containing many snowy peaks and vast glaciers.

Climate and Productions.—The climate of Turkestan is one of great extremes, and in the open plains the winters are excessively severe. But the watered valleys that occur within the mountain region yield fruits and grain in abundance.

Inhabitants.—The population is from 6,000,000 to 8,000,000—the greater number of the Mongol or Tartar race.

Industry.—The people of Turkestan are mostly cultivators of the soil, though some preserve the wandering habits of their forefathers, and occupy themselves chiefly with their flocks and herds. Silk is produced within the valley of the Oxus.

Divisions.—This vast region is broadly divided into Eastern Turkestan and Western Turkestan.

I.—EASTERN TURKESTAN now forms a province of the Chinese Empire. From 1864 to 1877 it formed an independent state under the Emir of Kashgar.

Eastern Turkestan is frequently called *Jetyshahr*, from its seven cities, of which the principal are *Kashgar*, *Yarkand*, and *Khotan*; all situated on the banks of affluents of the Ergheu river. Kashgar, the capital, is the most populous, but Yarkand is, commercially, the most important.

II.—WESTERN TURKESTAN includes Russian Turkestan, the independent Khanates of Khiva and Bokhara, and the Turkoman territory between the Amu and Persia.

1. **Russian Turkestan** forms a part of, and is therefore described under, Russian Central Asia.

2. **Khiva** has been greatly curtailed in the course of the wars with Russia. Its total area is about 20,000 square miles, and its population 700,000. The capital, *Khiva*, lies in the valley of Amu.

3. **Bokhara** includes a long strip of territory along the right bank of the Amu, and has an area of about 80,000 square miles, with a population of about 2,000,000. The capital is *Bokhara*.

4. The remaining portion of Turkestan, extending from the Amu to the borders of Persia, has an area of about 80,000 square miles, and consists for the most part of a sandy desert, on the borders of which dwell several warlike Turkoman tribes, some of which have been recently reduced to subjection by the Russians.

ASIATIC RUSSIA.

ASIATIC RUSSIA comprises three great divisions—the Caucasus, Siberia, and Central Asia.

I. THE CAUCASUS.

The Caucasus lies between the Black and Caspian Seas and is divided into *Cis-Caucasia*, north, and *Trans-Caucasia*, south, of the great chain of Mount Caucasus.

The *Caucasus* has an area of 170,000 square miles, or nearly three times that of England and Wales.

Surface.—The greater part of the Caucasus is mountainous.

1. **Mountains.**—The chain of the *Caucasus* rises above the snow-line, and its highest summit reaches upwards of 18,000 feet. In the southern part of the country, near the borders of Persia and Turkey, is *Mount Ararat*, 17,000 feet high.

2. **Rivers.**—The chief rivers are the *Kouban*, which flows into the *Black Sea*; and the *Terek* and *Kour* (chief tributary the *Aras*), which flow into the *Caspian Sea*.

3. **Lakes.**—The largest lake is that of *Goukcha* or *Sevan*.

Climate and Productions.—The climate is liable to great extremes of heat and cold, but is temperate on the average of the year. The productions of the soil include the vine, the mulberry, and the cotton-plant.

Inhabitants.—The inhabitants number about 4,000,000, who comprise people of various races—Georgians, Circassians, Armenians, and others.

Industry.—There is scarcely any regular industry. *Agriculture* is pursued to a limited extent.

Divisions and Towns.—Cis-Caucasia is divided into three, and Trans-Caucasia into nine, governments.

The chief town north of the Caucasus is *Stavropol*. *Tiflis*, the capital of the whole territory, is on the river *Kour*. *Potl*, the chief port on the *Black Sea*. *Kars*,¹ *Ardahan*, *Batoum*, and the surrounding territory, were ceded to Russia after the war with Turkey in 1877-78. *Erivan* is near the foot of *Mount Ararat*, on a tributary of the *Aras*.

II. SIBERIA.

Boundaries.—Siberia is bounded on the *north* by the *Arctic Ocean*, on the *east* by the *Pacific*, on the *south* by the *Chinese Empire* and *Central Asia*, and on the *west* by *Russia in Europe*.

The area of Siberia is about 4,800,000 square miles, *i.e.*, about eighty-four times the size of *England and Wales*.

Coasts.—The *northern* coasts of Siberia are washed by the *Arctic Ocean*. The *eastern* coasts are washed by *Behring Sea*, *Sea of Okhotsk*, and *Japan*, all opening into the *Pacific*.

¹ *Kars* has been besieged and taken by the Russians three times, in 1825, 1855, and 1877.

1. **Capes.**—North-East Cape, the northernmost point of the Old World; East Cape, the most easterly point of Asia; Cape Lopatka, the extreme south point of Kamchatka.

2. **Inlets.**—Gulfs of Obi and Yenesei; Gulf of Anadir; Sea of Okhotsk; Sea of Japan, with the Gulf of Tartary.

3. **Islands.**—The principal are the *Liakhov Islands*, the *Aleutian Islands*, the *Kurile Islands*, and *Saghalien*.

Natural Features.—Siberia is a vast lowland plain. On its southern borders are the Altai Mountains, adjoining which the country is hilly, and in some parts fertile. Further to the north are immense level plains, or steppes, which become more barren and desolate as they approach the polar sea. In the extreme east is the peninsula of Kamchatka, through which runs a chain of lofty volcanic mountains.

Rivers.—Siberia has three great rivers, among the longest in the Old World. These are the *Obi*, *Yenesei*, and *Lena*, all flowing into the Arctic Ocean. *Lake Baikal*, in the south of Siberia, is the largest fresh-water lake in the Old World.

Climate.—The climate is cold. It is only in the south that a moderate temperature is experienced.

The extreme north of Siberia surpasses any other region on the globe in the intense severity of its winter, which lasts nearly ten months.

Productions.—The natural productions are of two kinds—metals and furs—both of great value.

Gold, *silver*, *lead*, *iron*, and *copper* are worked, principally among the mountain-regions of the Ural and Altai. The fur-bearing animals (*sable*, *otter*, &c.) are most abundant towards the east.

Inhabitants.—Siberia has about 3,500,000 inhabitants. Many of them are exiles, condemned to work in the mines.

Industry.—The native tribes are chiefly hunters and fishers, and those dwelling in the eastern parts of the country are in a semi-barbarous condition. The people of Kamchatka are of short stature, and use the dog for purposes of draught. The commerce of this region is principally with China. The Russian and Chinese traders meet at Kiakhtha, to the south of Lake Baikal, on the border-line between the empires.

Divisions and Towns.—These are—

| <i>Divisions.</i> | <i>Towns.</i> |
|-------------------|--|
| WESTERN SIBERIA | Tobolsk, Ekaterinberg, Omsk. |
| EASTERN SIBERIA | Irkutsk, Khabarsk, Yakutsk, Petropavlovsk. |

IRKUTSK is the largest city of Siberia. It stands on the river Angara, a short distance below its issue from Lake Baikal. The town of *Petro-paulovski* is on the east coast of Kamchatka. *Tobolsk* is at the junction of the river Tobol with the Irtysh, the chief tributary of the Obi.

III. RUSSIAN CENTRAL ASIA.

This division of Asiatic Russia extends from the river Ural and the shores of the Caspian Sea to the Altai and the Thian Shan Mountains.

The *area* of this region is upwards of 1,000,000 square miles, or nearly twenty times that of England and Wales.

Surface.—The principal features are (1) the *Kirghiz Steppe* in the north; (2) the mountainous districts on the west; (3) the desert north and east of the Sea of Aral; and (4) a sterile plateau between the Sea of Aral and the Caspian.

Rivers.—The *Irtysh*, *Ishim*, and other tributaries of the Obi, on the north; the *Ili* on the east; and the *Amu* and *Syr* on the south.

Lakes.—The *Sea of Aral* and *Lake Balkash*, both of which are salt.

Climate and Productions.—Extremely hot in summer, and intensely cold in winter. Immense herds of cattle are reared on the steppes. Some tillage in the well-watered and fertile valleys in the south-east.

Inhabitants.—Central Asia has 3,500,000 inhabitants, an average of only three persons per square mile.

Divisions and Towns.—The Russian dominions in Central Asia are divided into nine governments and one district.

The chief towns are:—*Kokan*, *Tashkend* (the principal town in Russian Turkestan), *Khojend*, and *Samarkand*.

MALAY ARCHIPELAGO.

The MALAY or EAST INDIAN ARCHIPELAGO lies south-east of the Asiatic continent.

Of the islands included within this region the largest are:—*Borneo*, *Sumatra*, *Celebes*, *Java*, *Philippine Islands*, *Molucca Islands*, &c.

Boundaries.—The Pacific Ocean, the China Sea, and the Indian Ocean enclose the East Indian Archipelago.

The various islands which it embraces are divided by numberless lesser seas and channels, among which are the following :—*Java Sea*, *Celebes Sea*, *Banda Sea*, *Flores Sea*, and *Mindoro* (or *Sulu*) *Sea*.

Straits.—The *Strait of Malacca*, between the Malay peninsula and the island of Sumatra ; the *Strait of Sunda*, between the islands of Sumatra and Java ; and the *Strait of Macassar*.

Climate.—The East Indian Archipelago is crossed by the equator, and is principally within the torrid zone. The climate is therefore hot, but less so than that of the adjacent continent. The whole region is within the range of the monsoons, and experiences a copious fall of rain at particular seasons.

Productions.—The natural productions are rich in the extreme. They include *gold* and *precious stones* in the mineral kingdom, and numerous valuable *fruits* and *spices* in the vegetable world.

The *nutmeg* and the *clove* belong to the smaller islands of the Molucca group—formerly called, from this circumstance, the *Spice Islands*. The tree which yields *gutta-percha* is a native of Borneo and some other of the islands. *Sago* is the produce of the most easterly islands.

Inhabitants.—The entire population is upwards of 30,000,000. Java alone has above 16,000,000 inhabitants, and the Philippine Islands above 7,000,000.

The native races are in a condition of semi-barbarism. The ruling people, in most of the islands, are Malays, who are skilful navigators and active traders.

Industry.—A large amount of trade is carried on. The English, Dutch, American, Chinese, and Malays, are the chief agents in it. *Spices*, *gutta-percha*, *coffee*, *indigo*, *sugar*, *cigars*, and *tortoise-shell*, are among the productions exported to Europe and America ; *edible birds' nests* and the substance called the *tripang* are articles principally in demand among the Chinese.

Portions of the East Indian Archipelago belong to the Dutch, the Spanish, and the English.

1. The Dutch are masters of *Java*, *Celebes*, of portions of *Sumatra*, *Borneo*, and the *Molucca* group.

2. The Spaniards possess the *Philippine Islands*.

3. The English possess only the little island of *Labuan*, off the coast of Borneo; but a great part of the commerce of this region centres in Singapore.

Borneo is 270,000 square miles in area, or more than five times the size of England. It contains high mountains, navigable rivers, and dense forests; but its interior has not yet been explored by Europeans. The western and southern shores, with part of the east coast, belong to the Dutch. The province of *Sarawak*, on the north coast, has been ruled of late years by a British subject; but the larger portion of the island is divided amongst various native states, one of which includes the town and territory of *Borneo*, or *Bruni*. *Labuan Island* is off the mouth of a navigable river which leads to this town.

Sumatra is nearly three times the size of England. A chain of high mountains runs along its western coast. The chief stations of the Dutch are *Padang* and *Bencoolen*, on the western side of the island. There are numerous native states, one of the principal of which is *Acheen*, near its northern extremity.

Java is about 45,000 square miles in area—that is, not much less than the size of England. A chain of lofty volcanoes runs through the whole length of the island. Its chief city, *Batavia*, is the capital of the Dutch possessions in the East Indies. The smaller islands that stretch to the eastward of Java are chiefly Dutch. The Portuguese have a small settlement upon the north coast of Timor, the most eastwardly of the number.

Celebes has an area of about 72,000 square miles, and forms one of the Dutch possessions. The chief town is *Macassar*.

The *Molucca Islands*, to the eastward of Celebes, are principally Dutch. The most important among them is the small island of *Amboyna*.

The *Philippine Islands* constitute one of the most important possessions of the Spanish crown. The largest of them is called *Luzon*, which is nearly equal to England and Wales in point of size. *Mindanao* is next in size. All the Philippine Islands are mountainous, watered, and fertile. They produce tobacco, sugar, and rice in abundance. The chief city is *Manilla*, situated on the island of *Luzon*.

JAPAN.

Japan is an insular empire, situated to the eastward of the Asiatic continent, and within the Pacific Ocean. The largest island which it embraces is called *Nippon*; the next in size is *Jesso*.¹

¹ Besides Japan proper, the Kurile Islands to the north, and the Loo Choo Islands to the south, are included in the empire.

Extent.—The whole area of Japan is 160,000 square miles nearly three times the size of England and Wales.

Coasts.—Of great extent, and indented with magnificent natural harbours, such as the *Bays of Yedo and Osaka*.

Natural Features.—All the islands are mountainous. Several of the higher mountains are volcanoes. Fertile plains and valleys, watered by numerous rivers, extend between mountains and the sea.

Climate and Productions.—The climate of Japan is temperate and healthy. Among its productions are included *gold, silver, iron, copper, and tin*; besides the *tea-plant* and the *mulberry*, with many trees yielding valuable *gums* and *resins*.

Inhabitants.—The population of Japan is estimated to be upwards of 34,000,000. The country bears uniformly the appearance of populousness, and the cities are of large size.

Religion.—The Japanese are mostly *Buddhists*; but the higher classes generally profess *Confucianism*.

Industry.—The Japanese are an ingenious and a civil people, though their civilisation, like that of all Oriental nations, differs in many respects from European civilisation.

Their industry is displayed in the careful culture of the land, the roads which connect the various towns and villages, their skilful manufacture of *silk, cotton, and japanned wares*. *Rice, cotton, tobacco, tea-plant, and the mulberry*, are articles of extensive culture. The art of covering metals with varnish (*japanning*) derives its pre-eminence from this country. Their *porcelain* displays much skill.

Government.—The government of Japan is an absolute monarchy, under a ruler known as the *Mikado*. The laws are severe, and the punishments sanguinary.

Divisions and Towns.—Japan is at present (1881) divided into thirty-five provinces. The principal towns are:—

Tokio,¹ the capital, on the south-east coast of Nippon. **Yokohama** forms its port, and is the chief seat of the foreign trade. **Sai** **Hakodadi**, and **Matsumae**, are considerable commercial towns.

¹ Formerly called Jedo or Yedo.

AFRICA.

AFRICA lies to the south-westward of Asia, and to the south of Europe. Regarding it as a whole, this continent forms a vast peninsula, connected with the Asiatic continent by the Isthmus of Suez.

Boundaries.—Africa is bounded on the *north* by the Mediterranean Sea; on the *west* by the Atlantic Ocean; on the *east* by the Red Sea and the Indian Ocean; on the *south* by the Southern Ocean, a name which is given to the southwardly belt of water in which the Atlantic and Indian Oceans mingle.

Extent.—In point of size, Africa is more than three times larger than Europe, but nearly one-third smaller than Asia. Its *area* is about 12,000,000 square miles.

The *greatest length* from north to south is about 5,100 miles.

The *greatest breadth* from east to west is about 4,600 miles.

Coasts.—Remarkably regular and unbroken. Africa has, therefore, few gulfs or inlets of any extent.

1. **Capes.**—The following are the most important :—

(1.) On the *north* :—Bon, Blanco, Ceuta, and Sparte.

(2.) On the *west* :—Bojador, Blanco, Verde, Palmas, Lopez, and Frio.

(3.) On the *south* :—Good Hope and Agulhas.

(4.) On the *east* :—Corrientes, Delgado, and Guardafui.

Cape Blanco is the most *northerly* point of Africa. *Cape Verde*, the *st westerly*; *Cape Guardafui*, the most *easterly*; and *Cape Agulhas*, most *southerly*.

2. **Inlets.**—The principal are :—

) On the *north* :—The Gulfs of Sidra and Kabes.

) On the *west* :—The Gulf of Guinea.

) On the *south* :—False Bay and Algoa Bay.

) On the *east* :—The Red Sea, Gulf of Aden, and Delagoa Bay.

Channels and Straits.—The principal are :—

Strait of Gibraltar, between Morocco and Spain.

Mozambique Channel, between Madagascar and the mainland.

Strait of Bab-el-Mandeb, between the Red Sea and the Gulf of

Islands.—The principal islands are :—

1. *In the Atlantic Ocean* :—Madeira, Canary Islands, Cape Verd Islands, Fernando Po, Princes Island, St. Thomas, Annabon, Ascensio St. Helena, Tristan d'Acunha.

2. *In the Indian Ocean* :—Madagascar, Bourbon, Mauritius, Comor Islands, Seychelle Islands, Amirante Islands, Socotra.

Mountains.—The mountains of Africa may be divided into four systems, *northern, western, southern, and eastern.*

1. The **Northern System** embraces the chains of *Mount Atlas*, which stretch along the northern coasts, through Morocco, Algeria, and Tunis.

2. The **Western System** belongs to the western coasts of Africa, and includes the *Kong Mountains* and *Cameroon Mountains*.

3. The **Southern System** belongs to the extreme south of Africa and includes the *Nieuweld*, the *Sneeuberg*, and other ranges.

4. The **Eastern System** includes the *Drakensberg* or *Quathlamb Mountains*, the *Lupata Mountains*, the *Livingstone Mountains*, and the *mountains of Abyssinia*.

Tablelands.—The principal are :—The *Great African Plateau*, the *Plateau of Abyssinia*, the *Barca Plateau*, the *Plateau of Barbary*, and the *Plateau of Ahir* or *Asben*.

Plains.—The interior of Africa exhibits, for the most part, vast plains. In its *northern* half is the immense expanse of the Sahara, or Desert, and, further in the interior, the fertile lowland of central Africa, watered by the Niger and the rivers that belong to the basin of Lake Chad. In the *southern* half of Africa, the interior consists of plains which are moderately elevated, and bordered on either side by ranges of high ground.

Deserts.—The great natural feature of Africa is its Desert, or Sahara, which is by much the largest desert in the world. The Sahara stretches through 3,000 miles in the direction of east and west, and 1,000 miles from north to south. The general sterility of the Sahara is due to the absence of water, and the intense heat of the air, occasioned by the reflection of the sun's rays from an arid soil. But even the Sahara is not exclusively desert throughout. At distant intervals there occur *oases*, spots, or *oases*, where a perennial spring serves to supply the wants of men and animals who cross the wilderness, and to nourish a limited extent of surrounding verdure. The most thoroughly barren portion of the Sahara is its westerly division—between Fezzan and the shores of the Atlantic—within which vast space the oases are generally at long intervals apart than elsewhere. Extensive tracts are there covered with dry and heated sand, raised into hillocks, which shift their place under the influence of the burning wind known as the *simoon*, or *sirocco*.

Rivers.—The chief rivers of Africa are:—

1. *Flowing into the Mediterranean Sea*:—The Nile.
2. *Flowing into the Atlantic Ocean*:—Senegal, Gambia, Rio Grande, Niger or Quorra, Congo or Livingstone, Coanza, and Orange.
3. *Flowing into the Indian Ocean*:—Zambesi, Limpopo.

(1.) The Nile is formed by two streams—the *Blue Nile*, which rises in the mountains of Abyssinia; and the *White Nile*, which has its source in the Victoria Nyanza, under the equator. The river discharges its waters into the Mediterranean by a delta, after a course of at least 3,000 miles. Chief tributary, the *Atbara*.

(2.) The Congo, or Livingstone River, under the name of *Chambesi*, rises to the south of Lake Tanganyika, and flows through lakes Bangweolo, Moero, and Kamolondo. Its total length is about 2,900 miles.

(3.) The *Zambesi* is the largest river of eastern Africa, and rises under the name of *Leeba* in Lake Dilolo. It has a total course of 2,400 miles.

Lakes.—The northern half of Africa contains the following:—*Lake Chad*, situated in Soudan; *Lake Dembea*, in Abyssinia; *Lake Keroun*, in Egypt. Of the lakes that have been discovered during recent years in central and south Africa, the chief are:—The *Victoria Nyanza* and *Albert Nyanza*, *Lake Tanganyika*, *Lake Nyassa*, and *Lake Ngami*.

Climate.—Africa is the hottest division of the globe. More than three-fourths of its extent fall within the torrid zone, and these portions of the continent exhibit a broad and unbroken mass of land, upon which the rays of a vertical sun act with intense power.

1. The vast expanse of the Desert (or Sahara), in particular, reflects an excessive amount of heat from its arid and waterless surface. The whole region forms a great natural furnace, the heated atmosphere generated in which is carried by the winds over distant lands and seas.

2. The climate of tropical Africa is for the most part dry, but a vast quantity of rain falls at particular periods of the year. The dry and rainy seasons succeed one another with perfect regularity. In the Desert, rain seldom occurs. But the plains of Central Africa, south of the Desert, and also the low districts of the eastern and western coasts, have regular and abundant rains, of annual recurrence.

3. The climate of tropical Africa is unhealthy to Europeans, excepting at a sufficient elevation to counteract the influences of intense heat, combined with the rank vegetation of the coasts. The extreme portions of Africa, both north and south, fall within the temperate zones. The plains and valleys of the Atlas region have a climate which resembles,

in all essential regards, that experienced on the opposite shores of the Mediterranean. The Cape Colony, at the other extremity of the continent, is somewhat cooler.

Productions.—The chief productions are :—

1. **Metals and Minerals.**—*Gold-dust*, derived from the beds of numerous rivers within tropical Africa, has in all ages been an article of export. A part of Guinea is still distinguished as “the Gold coast,” though the quantity derived thence is now very small. The region of Mount Atlas includes ores of *iron*, *copper*, *lead*, and other metals. *Iron* and other useful ores occur within the Cape Colony and the tracts watered by the Zambesi. *Coal* occurs within the valley of the Zambesi.

2. **Vegetation.**—A vast number of the native plants of the African continent differ from those of other regions. But it is not until the Desert is passed that the difference becomes considerable. The rich fruits of southern Europe—the *fig*, *almond*, *orange*, *lemon*, *vine*, *mulberry*, and *peach*—all grow to perfection in the watered valleys of the Atlas. The plains that adjoin the southern base of the Atlas are the region of the *date-palm*, which is also seen in every oasis of the wilderness. But the Desert itself exhibits only a scanty covering of thorny shrubs and grasses, and its vast expanse forms a natural barrier to the passage of the various forms of life—vegetable and animal alike—that belong to the regions by which it is bounded upon either side.

The vegetation of Central Africa displays trees of vast size, and of species unknown elsewhere. Among its native plants are the *shea* or butter-nut, the *baobab* or monkey-bread, the *yam*, *ground-nut*, the *sugarcane*, *indigo*, and *cotton-plant*; and also the *oil-palm*. The highlands south of Abyssinia are the native region of the *coffee-tree*.

The extreme south of Africa is a third zone of vegetable life, in which such plants as the *heaths*, *geraniums*, and various *bulbs*, hold the most conspicuous place.

3. **Animals.**—The *lion*, *hyena*, the *giraffe* or *cameleopard*, *zebra*, *hippopotamus*, *rhinoceros*, *elephant*, *camel*, and a great variety of the *α* and *antelope* tribes, are among native African quadrupeds; the *ostrich* and the *guinea-fowl* among its birds, and the *crocodile* among its reptiles. Among the *apes* and other members of the monkey tribe, the *chimpanzee* and the *gorilla* of Western Africa make the nearest approach to the human figure.

Inhabitants.—Most of the inhabitants of Africa are *negroes*, of which branch of mankind this continent is the proper home.

1. The people of Northern Africa are *Berbers*, *Moors*, and *Arabs*, of swarthy complexion, but perfectly distinct from the Negro type. The wandering inhabitants of the Desert belong also to the Arab stock. It is not until the southern limit of the Sahara is passed that Negro Africa begins. This is the region known in African geography as Soudan—*i.e.*, the land of the blacks, or Negro-land.

2. The dark skin, thick lips, and woolly hair of the negro, are among the distinguishing features of that race. But there are numerous points of difference between the various Negro nations.

3. The extreme south of this continent is peopled by other varieties of the human family. The native races of Southern Africa are *Hottentots* and *Kaffirs*.

Religion.—The bulk of the people in central and south Africa are idolaters—making a “fetish” or god of any object. *Mohammedanism* prevails throughout Northern Africa. *Christianity* is professed not only by the European colonists in Africa, but also by the Copts of Egypt, and, in a corrupted form, by the Abyssinians.

Divisions.—The following are the main divisions :—

1. NORTHERN AFRICA.
2. EGYPT.
3. NUBIA.
4. ABYSSINIA.
5. CENTRAL AFRICA.

6. WESTERN AFRICA.
7. EASTERN AFRICA.
8. SOUTHERN AFRICA.
9. ISLANDS OF AFRICA.

THE ATLAS REGION, OR NORTHERN AFRICA.

NORTHERN AFRICA embraces four distinct countries, known as MOROCCO, ALGERIA, TUNIS, and TRIPOLI. Morocco is the most westerly of the four, Tripoli the most easterly. They form together a continuous region, which stretches along the shores of the Mediterranean and a portion of the Atlantic.

Natural Features.—*Mount Atlas* is the most conspicuous among the physical features of this region. The *plains* between the Atlas and the sea, and the valleys enclosed within the mountain region, are the most fertile portions of the territory. The hill-sides towards the Mediterranean and Atlantic are luxuriantly wooded.

Northern Africa has no large *rivers*, but there are numerous winter-torrents as well as some perennial streams of moderate size. The *climate* is warm, and generally healthy. The rains are copious, but confined to particular seasons.

Inhabitants.—The whole population of Northern Africa perhaps amounts to 14,000,000, and includes *Kabyles* or *Berbers*, who dwell among the mountains, and are supposed to be the descendants of the aborigines; *Moors*, who are a mixed race, dwelling in the cities; and *Arabs*, who occupy the open country, and dwell for the most part in tents. Algeria, which belongs to France, has also among its inhabitants a great many Europeans, chiefly French. The least populous portion of the entire region is Tripoli.

Productions.—The native productions of Northern Africa include *wool, gum, bees'-wax, dates, olive-oil, esparto-grass, and goatskins*. These are exported, and the manufactures of Europe introduced in their place. *Morocco leather* is prepared with peculiar skill from the skin of the native goat. The culture of *cotton, tobacco, the cochineal-plant, and indigo*, has been introduced into Algeria.

Divisions.—North Africa includes the following states:—(1) Morocco; (2) Algeria; (3) Tunis; (4) Tripoli.

1. **Morocco** is bounded on the west by the Atlantic Ocean, and has the Mediterranean Sea on a part of its northern frontier. On the south it is limited by the desert.

Morocco (or Marocco) has an area of about 280,000 square miles, and a population variously estimated at from three to eight millions. The form of *government* is that of an absolute monarchy, under a *sultan* or emperor. The chief towns of Morocco are:—*Morocco, Fez, and Mequinez*, three inland cities, situated near the western foot of the Atlas. *Mogadore* and *Tangier* are the chief ports.

2. **Algeria** lies to the east of Morocco. The Mediterranean Sea bounds it to the northward, and the desert to the south.

Algeria has an area of nearly 200,000 square miles, and a population of about 3,000,000. Algeria has formed, since 1830, a province of France. The chief towns are:—*Algiers*, the capital, on the Mediterranean coast; the ports of *Oran* and *Bona*; and *Constantine*, an inland town.

3. **Tunis** is east of Algeria. On the north and east it has the Mediterranean, on the south the Desert.

Tunis has an area of about 45,000,000 square miles. Its inhabitants number about 1,500,000. Tunis is governed by a Bey; but the government is now virtually under the control of the French Minister residing at Tunis. The chief towns are:—*Tunis*, the capital; *Goletta*, *Cairouan* (the spiritual capital of Tunis), and *Biserta*, an important port on the north coast.

4. **Tripoli** is to the east of Tunis. It consists of a long and narrow strip of country, between the Mediterranean and the Desert, the sands of which approach closely to the sea throughout, and in some places advance into its waters.

Tripoli, with Fezzan and Barca, has a total area of 844,000 square miles, the greater part of which is absolutely barren desert. Tripoli forms a province of the Turkish empire, and is ruled by a Pasha, who resides at *Tripoli*, the capital, on the Mediterranean coast. The chief town of Fezzan is *Mourzuk*. *Barca* lies to the east of Tripoli. *Beng-hasi*, a small seaport, is the capital.

EGYPT.

EGYPT is the lower portion of the Nile valley, extending from the coast of the Mediterranean up to the First Cataract, a distance of between five and six hundred miles.

Boundaries.—Egypt proper is bounded by the Mediterranean Sea on the *north*; by Nubia on the *south*; on the *east* by the Red Sea; and on the *west* by the Desert.

Extent.—The area of Egypt proper is estimated at 175,130 square miles, or three times that of England and Wales.

Natural Features.—Egypt has two great natural features—the river *Nile* and the *Desert*. Cultivation is limited to the lands that immediately adjoin the former, and over which its inundations reach.

Towards its mouth the Nile divides into two arms, distinguished as the Rosetta and Damietta branches: the space enclosed between is called the Delta. This forms a watered and fertile plain. The Nile overflows its banks annually, and lays the whole valley of Middle and Upper Egypt under water. Before returning to its proper channel, the river deposits a fertilising mud upon the inundated land, and the seed thrown upon this moistened soil returns an abundant harvest. The climate of Egypt is warm and dry, rain being of rare occurrence.

Inhabitants.—Egypt has 5,500,000 inhabitants, the vast majority of them belonging to the Arab race.¹

¹ There are a few descendants of the ancient Egyptians, or *Copts*, and also Turks, with Armenians, Syrians, Jews, and Europeans.

Religion.—The inhabitants are principally *Mohammedans*. Copts, however, are members of the *Christian Church*.

Industry.—The industry is principally agricultural.

Wheat, cotton, flax, sugar, hemp, tobacco, coffee, saffron, mull and dates, are among the productions of Egypt.

Government.—Egypt is nominally a province of the Turkish Empire, but the Khedive, as the present ruler is styled, is virtually independent.

Divisions.—The Nile valley is divided, within Egypt, into Lower, Middle, and Upper. The chief towns are:—

| Divisions. | Chief Town. | Other Towns. |
|----------------|-------------|----------------------|
| LOWER EGYPT . | Alexandria. | Rosetta, Damietta, S |
| MIDDLE EGYPT . | Cairo. | Ghizeh. |
| UPPER EGYPT . | Siout. | Kenneh, Assuan. |

CAIRO, the capital, and *Alexandria*, the chief seaport, are the two large cities of Egypt. Cairo stands on the right bank of the Nile and communicates by railway with both Alexandria and Suez. Alexandria is to the west of the Nile, on the Mediterranean coast. Suez and *Damietta*, at the mouths of the Nile, are seaports of much importance. *Port Said*, to the eastward of Damietta, is the European terminus of the Suez Canal. Suez is at the head of the Red Sea and is the southern terminus of the canal. Egypt possesses numerous remains of ancient art, amongst them the Pyramids and the ruins of Thebes, both upon a scale of colossal magnitude.

NUBIA.

Boundaries.—Nubia is bounded on the north by Egypt, on the east, by the Red Sea; south, by Abyssinia; and west, by the Desert.

Natural Features.—The great features of Nubia, like those of Egypt, are the *Nile valley* and the *Desert*. The two arms of the river—respectively the *Blue Nile* and the *White Nile*—unite their waters at the town of Khartum, in Upper Nubia: lower down, the Nile is joined by the river *Tecazze*, or *Atbara*.

The valley of the Nile is much narrower in Nubia than in Egypt, and the extent of cultivable land is proportionately less. The sands of the Desert approach, in some places, close to the river's bank.

Climate.—The climate is hotter than that of Egypt.

Productions.—The *acacia*, *mimosa*, *date-palm*, *sugar-cane*, *senna-plant*, and *ebony-tree*, are among the productions of Nubia.

Inhabitants.—Nubia has about 1,000,000 inhabitants.

By far the greater part of the country is an arid wilderness, tenanted principally by wild beasts. The industry of its few inhabitants is exclusively agricultural: they grow the grain called *dhourrah*, together with *tobacco*, and live in part upon *dates*.

Government.—Nubia is subject to Egypt, and is ruled by a governor, resident at Khartum. *Kordofan* and *Darfur*, west of Upper Nubia, are subject to the same rule.

Towns.—The chief towns are *Khartum* (the capital), *Sennaar*, and *New Dongola*, all on the Nile. Khartum is near the point of junction of the Blue and White Niles. *Souakin*, on the Red Sea, is the only port of Nubia.

ABYSSINIA.

Abyssinia lies south-east of Egypt. It is limited to the east by lofty mountains, between which and the Red Sea there intervenes a low and heated plain.

Natural Features.—Abyssinia is a highland region. It consists of lofty table-lands, crossed by mountain-chains, the summits of which are covered with snow.

The upper portions of the Blue Nile and the Atbara, with Lake Tzana, or Dembea, are in Abyssinia. The climate is hot in the lower valleys, but temperate and healthy on the upland plains.

Inhabitants.—Abyssinia has about 5,000,000 inhabitants, composed of warlike and semi-barbarous races. The ruling people are the Galla, a race of cruel and savage warriors.

Divisions.—Abyssinia, formerly a powerful kingdom, had within recent times become broken up into several distinct states, which are at present nominally united under a single ruler. The principal divisions and towns are:—

| Divisions. | Chief Town. | Other Towns. |
|------------|-------------|-----------------------|
| TIGRE . . | Adowa . . | Antalo, Sokota. |
| AMHARA . . | Gondar . . | Debra-Tabor, Magdala. |
| SHOA . . | Ankober . . | Angolala, Amba. |

GONDAR, the ancient capital, lies to the northward of Lake Demba. *Debra-Tabor* is to the eastward of that lake: *Magdala* (stormed by the British in 1868), farther to the south-east. *Massowah*, a port on the Red Sea, which forms the principal approach to Abyssinia, belongs to Egypt. *Zeyla*, on the shore of Annesley Bay, to the southward of Massowah, also belongs to Egypt.

CENTRAL AFRICA.

Boundaries.—The plain of Central Africa is bounded on the north by the Sahara, or Desert; on the south by the Kong Mountains and the unknown regions of the interior; on the east it adjoins the regions of the Upper Nile; on the west, that in which the rivers Senegal and Gambia originate.

Extent.—This region measures 3,000 miles in the direction of east and west, and 1,000 in that of north and south.

Natural Features.—Central Africa is a fertile and watered plain, of vast extent. It includes the basin of Lake Chad, and the chief part of the river Niger.

1. *Lake Chad* is a fresh-water lake, and varies greatly in extent with the seasons of rain or drought. It receives the Shary and Yeou, but has no outlet.

2. The river *Niger* rises near the western extremity of the Kong Mountains. It is joined in its lower course by the Benue river, and afterwards flows, through an opening in the mountain region, into the Gulf of Guinea.

Climate.—The climate of Central Africa is amongst the hottest on the globe, but it is free from the unhealthy influences of the coast. The seasons of rain and drought succeed one another with undeviating regularity.

Inhabitants.—The inhabitants of this region are principally negroes—intermixed with Arab and Moorish races, who are for the most part in a condition of superior social advancement to the Negro tribes, and are consequently the ruling people.

The Negro populations of Central Africa are at least partially civilised. They have settled habits of life, cultivate their fields, weave cotton cloth, and dye it with bright colours. Many of their towns are of considerable size, and the courts of the native kings display a rude kind of splendour. The slave-trade has always been the curse of Negro Africa, and the bane of every effort hitherto made for its enlightenment.

Religion.—The negroes are generally heathen: the remainder of the population Mohammedan.

Productions.—The commercial productions are *gold-dust*, *ivory*, and *ostrich feathers*, together with *slaves*. The merchants engaged in the trade of this region are principally Moors, who form caravans for the purpose of crossing the Desert.

Divisions.—The divisions of Central Africa are numerous and fluctuating in extent.

One of the most important localities is *Timbuctoo*, which stands on the north side of the Niger, a few miles distant from that river. *Timbuctoo* is a centre of considerable caravan-traffic; but it consists only of mud-built houses, and is surrounded by a mud wall. *Sego*, on the Niger, is a town of some size. *Kano* and *Kashna*, further to the east, are also of some size, and the former has considerable commerce.

WESTERN AFRICA.

Western Africa extends along the coast of the Atlantic from the border of the Desert southward to the latitude of Cape Frio—a range of between 3000 and 4000 miles.

This extended range of coast exhibits a succession of low *plains*, backed by high grounds at some distance inland.

The *rivers* of Western Africa, within the tropics, are the Senegal, Gambia, Grande, Niger, Congo, and Coanza. The *climate* of the whole region is intensely hot, and exceedingly unhealthy to Europeans.

Inhabitants.—The native inhabitants are throughout of Negro race, and, as in other parts of Negro Africa, form numerous petty kingdoms, frequently at war with one another, and in a condition of semi-barbarism. A few Europeans are settled at various points on the coast.

Productions.—The productions of Western Africa are *palm-oil* wax, and various *gums*, together with *gold-dust*, *ivory*, and *feathers*. *Slaves* were formerly largely deported from some parts coast, chiefly to the south of the equator.

Divisions.—Western Africa is divided, north of the equator into *Senegambia* and *Guinea*: to the south of that line into *Loango*, *Congo*, *Angola*, and *Benguela*.

Senegambia is the region watered by the river Senegal and the Gulf of Guinea.

Guinea extends along the shores of the Gulf of Guinea, and includes the native kingdoms of Ashantee, chief town *Coomassie*; *Dahomey*, chief town *Abbeokuta*; and *Yarriba*, chief town *Abbeokuta*. The *Badagry* and *Lagos* are on the eastern part of the Gulf of Guinea.

Liberia, a settlement of negroes, consisting of liberated slaves from the United States, occupies a part of the coast between *Senegambia* and *Guinea*, to the westward of Cape Palmas. Its chief town is *Monrovia*.

Great Britain, France, and Portugal have settlements on the western coasts of the African continent.

1. The **British possessions** in Western Africa consist of the *Gambia*, *Sierra Leone*, *Cape Coast Castle*, and *Fort St. John*.

(1.) The British possessions on the *Gambia* consist of *St. Mary* and the town of *Bathurst*, at the mouth of the river; *Fort St. John*, situated 30 miles above the mouth; and *Macarthy Island*, 25 miles up the river.

(2.) *Sierra Leone* is a peninsula situated about midway between the *Gambia* river and Cape Palmas. It was originally established (in 1787) as a place of refuge for liberated negroes, who form the chief part of the population. The capital of the settlement is *Freetown*, on the north bank of the river *Rokelle*.

(3.) *Cape Coast Castle* is the principal of the British settlements on the Gold Coast. *Lagos*, considerably farther to the eastward, belongs to Britain. *Elmina*, and a few other settlements, formerly Dutch, were transferred to Britain in 1871.

2. The **French settlements** in this region consist of *Fort St. Pierre*, at the mouth of the Senegal, and the island of *Goree*, near Cape Palmas.

3. The **Portuguese possessions** are principally to the south of the equator. They include the provinces of *Angola* (chief town *Paul de Loanda*) and *Benguela* (chief town, *St. Philip*).

EASTERN AFRICA.

The *coasts* of Eastern Africa, from the equator southward to Delagoa Bay, exhibit a general resemblance to those on the opposite side of the continent—that is, low, hot, and moist *plains* along the coast, backed by high grounds in the interior, with a luxuriant *vegetation* and an unhealthy *climate*. The native *population* is chiefly negro. The commercial *productions* include gold dust, ivory, gums, bees' wax, ostrich feathers, and slaves.

Divisions.—Three foreign powers—the British, Portuguese, and the Arabs—exercise sway over this portion of the African continent.

1. To the British now belongs the *Delagoa Bay* district.
2. The Portuguese possessions reach from the neighbourhood of Delagoa Bay northward to Cape Delgado. They include the territories of Sofala and Mozambique, with the towns of *Mozambique*, *Quillimane*, *Sofala*, and *Inhambane*, situated on the coast, and *Sena* (on the river *Zambesi*), in the interior.
3. The coast subject to Arab rule reaches from Cape Delgado to the equator. It includes the towns of *Quiloa*, *Zanzibar*, and *Mombas*, all situated on islands which adjoin the mainland. To the westward of this region is the tract of country which contains the large lakes of *Tanganyika*, *Nyassa*, *Shirwa*, and others.

SOUTHERN AFRICA.

The southern extremity of the African continent comprehends two distinct and extensive provinces under British rule—namely, the *Cape Colony* and *Natal*; and two independent Dutch republics, known as the *Transvaal* and the *Orange Free State*.

I. THE CAPE COLONY.

The Cape Colony derives its distinguishing name from the Cape of Good Hope. It includes that part of Africa which is to the south of the Orange river, and which extends thence to the Atlantic and Southern oceans.

Extent.—The area of the Cape Colony is about 220,000 square miles, which is equal to four times the size of England and Wales.

Capes.—*Cape Agulhas* and the *Cape of Good Hope* are the two most important headlands of South Africa.

Surface.—The Cape Colony consists of a series of plains, which stretch in the general direction of east and west, and are divided from one another by successive chains of hills. These reach their greatest altitude in the Nieuvelde Mountains, the highest points of which are 12,000 feet above the sea. The arid and gravelly plain along the southern base of the Nieuvelde chain is called the *Great Karroo*.

Rivers.—The rivers of the Cape Colony are the *Orange* (or *Ganjes*), on its northern border, with the *Oliphant*, *Breede*, *Gauritz*, *Ganlon*, *Great Fish*, *Keiskamma*, and *Great Kei*.

Climate.—The climate is dry, temperate, and healthy—better suited, on the whole, for pastoral industry than for agricultural operations.

Inhabitants.—The population numbers nearly 750,000, including both white and coloured races.

The whites are partly of British and partly of Dutch descent, for the colony was originally planted by the Dutch. The natives included *Hottentots* and *Kaffirs*—the latter being by much the more numerous.

Industry.—Sheep and cattle farming is the most important pursuit of the settlers at the Cape. A great quantity of *wool* is annually exported to England, with *skins*, *hides*, and *tallow*. Some *wine* is also exported.

Government.—By a governor, appointed by the British Crown, and a colonial parliament.

Divisions and Towns.—The Cape Colony forms two great divisions—an eastern and western. The chief place in the westerly division is *Cape Town*, which is the capital of the colony. *Cape Town* stands on the shore of Table Bay, a little to the northward of the *Cape of Good Hope*, and in the immediate vicinity of a well-known mountain called, from its flat top, *Table Mountain*. The chief towns in the easterly division of the colony are *Graham's Town* and *King William's Town*. *Port Elizabeth* and *East London* are rising seaports.

Griqualand West, *Basutoland*, and other territories, are politically attached to the Cape Colony.

Griqualand West is chiefly famous for its valuable *diamond* mines. *Kimberley*, in the centre of the diamond fields, is the capital.

Basutoland, a mountainous region drained by the headwaters of the *Orange* river. South of *Basutoland* are the native districts of *Griqualand East* and the *Transkei*, also attached to the Cape Colony.

II. NATAL.

NATAL lies to the north-east of the Cape Colony.

Boundaries.—Its boundaries are: on the north, the river Tugela; on the south, the river Umtamfuna; on the east, the Indian Ocean; on the west, the Draken-berg or Kathlamba Mountains.

Extent.—The area of the province is 18,000 square miles, or little more than one-third the size of England.

Natural Features.—Natal consists, along the coast, of a low plain, which rises gradually towards the interior. Its longest river is the Tugela, which flows into the Indian Ocean.

Climate.—The climate is warmer than that of the Cape.

Productions.—The *sugar-cane* and the *cotton-plant* flourish; but *wheat* and other productions of temperate latitudes flourish on the higher plains of the interior.

Inhabitants.—The great majority of the population are *Kaffirs*. The whites, who number about 22,000, are chiefly *British* and *Dutch*.

Industry.—Pastoral industry occupies the chief attention of the settlers. *Sugar*, *coffee*, *arrowroot*, *wool*, &c., are exported.

Towns.—The capital of Natal is the *Pietermaritzburg*, in the interior: the chief port is *D'Urban*. The colony is under the rule of a governor, appointed by the British Crown.

III. THE ORANGE RIVER FREE STATE.

The ORANGE FREE STATE is bounded on the *north* by the Transvaal, on the *west* and *south* by Griqualand West and the Cape Colony, and on the *east* by Basutoland and Natal.

The area of the Free State is estimated at 40,000 square miles, little more than that of Ireland; and its population, who are mainly of Dutch descent, number about 50,000. They are mostly engaged in sheep-farming, and *wool* forms the principal article of export. Among its mineral productions are *diamonds* and other precious stones. *Ostrich-farming* is also an important industry. The government is republican in form. The small town of *Bloemfontein* is the capital.

IV. THE TRANSVAAL.

The TRANSVAAL comprises an extensive territory lying beyond the Vaal river: hence its name.

1. The area of the Transvaal is estimated at 100,000 square miles, or about twice that of England and Wales. The white population (mainly Boers) number about 40,000, and are almost entirely engaged in pastoral pursuits. Immense numbers of sheep and cattle are reared, and *wool* and *hides* are largely exported.

2. The Transvaal was annexed by the British in 1877; but it has recently been restored to the Boers, who have re-established the republican form of government. The capital is *Pretoria*, but *Potchefstroom* is the largest town.

V. ZULULAND.

ZULULAND is bounded on the *east* by the Indian Ocean, and on the *west* and *south* by the Transvaal and Natal.

The area is estimated at about 15,000 square miles, with a population of 300,000. Previous to the war of 1879, Zululand was independent under Cetywayo; but after the defeat of his army and his capture, the country was parcelled out among a number of chiefs, who are under the control of a British Resident.

ISLANDS OF AFRICA.

With the exception of Madagascar and the Comoro Islands, the African Islands belong to various European nations.

1. The islands that belong to SPAIN are—the Canary Islands and Fernando Po.

The **Canary Islands** are situated in the Atlantic Ocean. The largest of them is Teneriffe, the peak of which reaches 12,236 feet above the sea. The second in size bears the name of Grand Canary. All the islands are fertile, healthy, and productive. Corn, dates, figs, lemons, the vine, sugar, tobacco, cochineal, and barilla, are among their productions. Population, 227,000, wholly of Spanish descent. The chief towns are *Santa Cruz* (on Teneriffe) and *Palmas* (on Grand Canary).

Fernando Po is the largest of four islands situated in the Gulf of Guinea. It is fertile, but unhealthy, and has but few settlers on it. The chief town, *Clarence*, is chiefly inhabited by liberated negroes.

2. The islands that belong to PORTUGAL are—Madeira, the Cape Verde Islands, Prince's Island, and St. Thomas.

Madeira has been already described (*see page 93*).

The **Cape Verde Islands** are situated in the Atlantic, west of Cape Verde. They are less fertile than either Madeira or the Canaries, but produce sugar, oranges, and other fruits. Population, 85,000. *Mindello* (on St. Vincent) and *Porto Prayo* (on Santiago) are the chief towns.

Prince's Island and **St. Thomas** are both in the Gulf of Guinea. Their population consists chiefly of natives, among whom are a few Portuguese settlers.

Annabon is claimed both by Spain and Portugal.

3. The islands belonging to GREAT BRITAIN are—St. Helena, Ascension, Tristan d'Acunha, Mauritius, Roderigue, the Seychelle group, the Amirante group, and Socotra.

St. Helena is in the South Atlantic, 1,200 miles distant from the nearest point of the African mainland. It is about one-third the size of the Isle of Wight, and rises to 2,700 feet above the sea. The population is about 7,000. *James Town* is the capital.

Ascension is rather smaller than St. Helena. It is 800 miles distant from that island, and 1,000 miles from Cape Palmas, on the African continent. It is used chiefly as a station for the British cruisers in the adjacent seas.

Tristan d'Acunha is the largest of three islands which lie 2,000 miles to the westward of the Cape of Good Hope. It is a barren rock—on which, however, are a few residents.

Mauritius, in the Indian Ocean, is a beautiful and fertile island, 676 square miles in area—about five times larger than the Isle of Wight. It is hilly, the highest elevation reaching nearly 3,000 feet. Sugar, coffee, and cotton are its chief articles of produce. The population numbers above 320,000, the greater number of them derived from the hill regions of Hindostan. Many of the white inhabitants are of French descent. The chief town is *St. Louis*.

Roderigue is to the eastward of Mauritius. The **Seychelle Islands**, and also the **Amirantes**, are to the northward. All of these are dependencies of Mauritius.

Socotra is a large island to the east of Cape Guardafui. Its inhabitants are chiefly Arabs, and the island now belongs to Great Britain.

4. The island of **Ré-union** or **Bourbon**, situated in the Indian Ocean, belongs to FRANCE. It lies to the south-west of Mauritius, and is rather larger than that island. It contains an active volcano. The population numbers 210,000. Sugar, cloves, and coffee are produced. The chief town is *St. Denis*.

5. **Madagascar**, one of the largest islands on the globe, has an area of 200,000 square miles, or four times the size of England.

Its interior is mountainous, with a belt of fertile but unhealthy low-land round the coast. The native population is believed to number between four and five millions. They are under a native sovereign, whose capital is the town of *Tananarivo*, in the centre of the island.

The **Comoro Islands** are situated in the Mozambique Channel. They are four in number, and form a native kingdom. One of them, however, *Mayotta*, is the seat of a French settlement.

AMERICA.

AMERICA, or the New World, extends north and south between the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans from the 80° N. to 55° S. lat., a distance of more than 9000 miles. The width of the American continent varies exceedingly, being 3100 miles under the 45th parallel N. lat., 3200 miles under the 5th parallel S. lat., while the intermediate isthmus is at one part only 28 miles across. Compared with the Old World the greatest dimensions of America are from north to south, while those of the Old World are from east to west.

This Western Continent, as it is sometimes called, comprehends two great divisions, called *North and South America*. These are united by the Isthmus of Panama. Each of these divisions is continental in point of magnitude, North America having an area of 8,600,000 square miles, and South America 7,000,000 square miles, while the total length of the coast-line of both divisions is not far short of 40,000 miles.

NORTH AMERICA.

Boundaries.—North America is bounded on the *north* by the Arctic Ocean, on the *east* by the Atlantic Ocean, and on the *west* by the Pacific Ocean. To the *south* it passes into a narrow region, and finally terminates in the Isthmus of Panama.

Extent.—The area of North America is estimated at 8,600,000 square miles, which is considerably more than double the size of Europe, but scarcely half that of Asia. The *greatest length*, from north to south, is 4,500 miles; the *greatest breadth*, from east to west, is 3,100 miles.

Coasts.—The eastern coasts of North America are much more irregular than the western.

1. **Inlets.**—The principal inlets are :—

(1.) On the *east*, Baffin Bay, Hudson Bay, Gulf of St. Lawrence, Bay of Fundy, Gulf of Mexico, and Caribbean Sea.

(2.) On the *west*, the Gulf of California, an arm of the Pacific.

(3.) On the *north*, the Gulf of Boothia, an arm of the Arctic Ocean.

2. Capes.—The principal are :—

- (1.) On the *north*—Capes Barrow and Bathurst.
- (2.) On the *east*—Capes Farewell, Charles, Race, Breton, Sable (Nova Scotia), Cod, Hatteras, Sable (Florida), Catoche, Gracias-à-Dios.
- (3.) On the *west*—Capes Prince of Wales and St. Lucas.

*. * *Cape Charles* is the most eastwardly point of North America, and *Cape Prince of Wales* the most westwardly point. The extremity of Boothia peninsula forms the most northerly point of the mainland ; *Cape Columbia*, the most northerly point of land at present known ; its latitude is 83° 7' north.

3. Peninsulas.—The principal are :—

- (1.) On the *east*—Labrador, Nova Scotia, Florida, and Yucatan.
- (2.) On the *west*—Lower California and Alaska.
- (3.) On the *north*—Melville Peninsula and Boothia Peninsula.

4. Isthmus.—The most important isthmus in the New World is that of Panama, which connects North and South America.

Islands.—The principal islands are :—

1. On the *east*—the West Indies, the Bermuda Islands, Newfoundland, Prince Edward Island, Anticosti, and a few small islets in the Gulf of St. Lawrence.
2. On the *north*—Greenland, Cumberland Island, Southampton Island, Cockburn Island, North Devon, Grinnell Land, Grant Land, the Parry Islands, Banks Land, Victoria Land, Boothia, and other little known tracts of land that lie to the west and north of Baffin Bay.
3. On the *west*—Vancouver Island, Queen Charlotte Islands, and the Islands of the Sitka Archipelago.

Surface.—The highlands of the New World stretch in the general direction of north and south. North America has two great mountain-systems—the *Rocky Mountains* and the *Alleghany Mountains* ; the former towards the western side of the continent, the latter near its eastern shores.

1. The highest points of the *Alleghany Mountains* scarcely exceed 6,000 feet ; the *Rocky Mountains* reach 16,000 feet. Between the Rocky Mountains and the Pacific is a succession of highland regions, with elevated mountain groups on the immediate borders of the ocean. One portion of this region consists of the *plateau of Utah*, a tract enclosed by mountain-chains on every side.

2. The narrower portion of the New World—between the Gulf of Mexico and Caribbean Sea upon one side, and the Pacific on the other—consists of table-lands, bordered by low plains on either side. The *table-lands of Mexico* reach 9,000 feet above the sea.

3. The interior of North America, from the Gulf of Mexico northwards to the Arctic Ocean, is a vast lowland plain. This plain includes the region of the *prairies*, covered with a luxuriant growth of long grass, and diversified at intervals by tracts of forests. The river Mississippi and its tributaries water the southwardly division of the great plain.

Rivers.—The principal rivers of North America, named in the order of the seas into which they flow, are :—

1. On the east :—

Flowing into the Gulf of Mexico—Mississippi, Grand del Norte.

Flowing into the Gulf of St. Lawrence—St. Lawrence.

Flowing into Hudson Bay—Nelson, Churchill, Severn, Albany.

Flowing into the Atlantic Ocean—Connecticut, Hudson, Delaware, Susquehanna, Potomac, James, Roanoke, Savannah, Alabama.

2. On the west :—

Flowing into the Pacific Ocean—Fraser, Oregon, Sacramento.

Flowing into the Gulf of California—Colorado.

3. On the north :—

Flowing into the Arctic Ocean—Mackenzie, Coppermine, and Back.

. The *Mississippi* is the longest river on the globe, its length by the *Missouri* arm being 4,000 miles. The *Missouri* rises in the Rocky Mountains, and joins the *Mississippi* about midway between the source of that stream and its outlet in the Gulf of Mexico. The *St. Lawrence* has a much shorter course than the *Mississippi*; but it pours into the sea an immense volume of water, derived from the great lakes of which it forms the outlet.

Lakes.—The principal lakes, and the countries in which they are situated, are as follow :—

Winnipeg, Athabasca, Great Slave Lake, Great Bear Lake, in the North-West Territory—*Superior, Huron, Erie, and Ontario*, between Canada and the United States—*Michigan, Champlain*, and the *Great Salt Lake*, in the United States—*Nicaragua and Leon*, in Central America.

. *Lake Superior* is the largest fresh-water lake on the globe. *Lakes Superior, Michigan, Huron, Erie, and Ontario*, are united by connecting channels; and the river *St. Lawrence*, which flows out of *Lake Ontario*, carries their surplus waters to the sea. Between *Ontario* and *Erie* are the *Falls of Niagara*, the most stupendous on the globe.

Climate.—The countries of the New World are somewhat colder, in correspondent latitudes, than those of the Old World, and they have generally a greater quantity of rain.

The eastern coasts of North America, and also its interior plains, are liable to great extremes of heat and cold at opposite seasons, whilst its western shores have a more equable temperature. The West Indies, the coasts of Central America, the low plain at the foot of the Mexican plateau, and the southernmost portions of the United States, are the hottest regions of North America. The coldest parts are those that stretch from Hudson Bay towards the Arctic Ocean.

Productions.—The precious metals, as well as the more useful metals and minerals, are abundantly distributed. The native vegetation is also particularly rich and varied.

1. **Metals and Minerals.**—The mineralogy of America is rich and varied. The country lying to the west of the Rocky Mountains is one of the chief gold-producing regions of the world. California, within the United States, and British Columbia, further to the northward, are the great localities of auriferous deposit. Mexico is also a region of great mineral wealth, and its mines supplied at a former period considerable amounts of *gold* and *silver*. The countries on the eastern side of North America, especially in the neighbourhood of the Alleghany Mountains and the St. Lawrence basin, are rich in the more useful productions of the mineral kingdom—*iron* and other metals, with *coal*. The coal-fields of the United States are of vast extent and great value. Coal also occurs in New Brunswick, Nova Scotia, and Cape Breton.

2. **Vegetation.**—The native vegetation of the New World differs from that of the eastern hemisphere. Many of the plants and trees that are common in the Old World are not found upon the opposite side of the Atlantic Ocean; while, on the other hand, the productions of the American soil are in numerous instances peculiar to that part of the globe. Among food-plants native to the American continent are *maize*, the *potato*, and the *manioc* (or cassava). The first named is the only one of the cereals that is indigenous to the American soil. The root of the manioc or cassava supplies the chief article of nutriment to the Indian population of tropical America. The potato has been carried from the temperate regions of the western world over every portion of the civilised globe; as also has *tobacco*, another of the plants native to the American soil. Plants of the *cactus* tribe are among the native productions of North America, as also are the *azalia*, *magnolia*, and the *aloe*. The *forests* of the New World are of vast extent.

3. **Zoology.**—(1.) Neither the horse, the ass, the common ox and sheep, the hog, the camel, nor the elephant, are native to the New World. Among carnivorous quadrupeds, the lion, tiger, leopard, and hyena, are unknown in the American wilderness. The *puma* and the *jaguar*—natives of tropical America—are the most formidable of its carnivora, but are inferior in strength and ferocity to the lion and tiger

of the Old World. In the higher latitudes of North America there are numerous *wolves*, *foxes*, and *bears*, with the Canadian *lynx*, and the *moose-deer* or elk supplies a parallel to the rein-deer of northern Europe.

(2.) The *bison*, or American buffalo, is one of the most characteristic animals native to the American prairie, but it has never been domesticated. The *musk-ox*, and other members of the deer kind, also, like the *beaver*, and numerous fur-bearing animals, abound in the higher latitudes of the American continent.

(3.) The birds of America, and also the reptiles, insects, and members of the animal world, are in nearly all cases different from those of other continents. The true *humming-birds* are peculiar to America. The *rattle-snake* and the *boa-constrictor* are also American.

(4.) The domestic cattle of the Old World are now reared in the plains of the western continent. The *horse*, *ox*, and *sheep*, all originally introduced by Europeans, abound throughout its vast extent.

Inhabitants.—The *population* of North America numbers about 68,000,000, above three-fourths of them the descendants of European colonists. Less than a fourth consist of native Indians, and mixed races.

1. The native man of America is the red (or copper-coloured) Indian—one of the five leading varieties into which the family of mankind is commonly divided. The numbers of the American Indian race have vastly diminished since the settlement of Europeans in the New World.

2. The *white* population of the United States and the St. Lawrence valley comprehends members of most European lands; but the British descent are by far the most numerous. The white population of Mexico and the Central American states is almost exclusively of Spanish origin.

Divisions.—The principal divisions of North America are

1. BRITISH NORTH AMERICA.

QUEBEC.

ONTARIO.

NEW BRUNSWICK.

NOVA SCOTIA.

PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND.

NORTH-WEST TERRITORIES

MANITOBA.

NEWFOUNDLAND.

2. THE UNITED STATES.

3. MEXICO.

4. CENTRAL AMERICA.

GUATEMALA.

SAN SALVADOR.

BRITISH HONDURAS.

HONDURAS.

NICARAGUA.

COSTA RICA.

5. THE WEST INDIES.

BRITISH NORTH AMERICA.

The British territory in North America is bounded on the north by the Arctic Ocean; on the south by the United States; on the east by the Atlantic; on the west by the Pacific Ocean and the United States.

1. This vast area comprehends upwards of 3,600,000 square miles, the whole of which is now comprehended within the "Dominion of Canada," which stretches across the entire breadth of the mainland, from the Atlantic to the Pacific.

2. Large portions of this immense region, embracing the valley of the St. Lawrence and the shores of the Gulf of St. Lawrence, with part of the Winnipeg basin, and the country lying west of the Rocky Mountains, have been colonised—the St. Lawrence valley and adjacent seacoast at a comparatively early period, the other portions within a much more recent date.

3. The St. Lawrence valley, from the Great Lakes to the sea, constitutes Canada proper. New Brunswick, Nova Scotia, and Prince Edward Island, formerly distinct colonies, together with British Columbia, the province of Manitoba, and the North-West Territory, are federally united with Canada proper, and form portions of the "Dominion of Canada," which thus includes the whole of British North America, except the island of Newfoundland, which is still a distinct colony.

Natural Features.—The river St. Lawrence, and the magnificent chain of lakes from which it issues, are the chief natural features of Canada.

Climate.—The climate, though perfectly healthy, is severe within Lower Canada (Quebec); but Upper Canada (now Ontario) enjoys a more genial temperature. Every part of Canada is fertile. The climate and soil of the neighbouring provinces do not differ in any material degree from that of Canada.

Productions.—The vast forests of *pine* which cover large portions of the St. Lawrence valley form its chief natural wealth. The mineral resources are very considerable. *Iron, lead, copper*, and other metals, are abundant in Canada: *coal* occurs in New Brunswick, and also in Nova Scotia and Cape Breton Island.

Inhabitants.—The "Dominion of Canada" includes a population of more than 4,350,000. Newfoundland, which is not included within the federation, has above 146,000.

The population of Canada proper undergoes rapid increase by immigration from Great Britain and Ireland. In Lower Canada (or Quebec) the majority of the inhabitants are of French origin.

Industry.—The labours of the field and the forest : prime objects of the Canadian settler's industry.

Wheat, timber, and other *forest-produce* (as *pot and pearl*) exported. The extensive *fisheries* pursued in the neighbour Newfoundland furnish the chief employment of its people.

Government.—The "*Dominion of Canada*" comprises the four provinces of Ontario (Upper Canada), Quebec (Canada), New Brunswick, and Nova Scotia, to which toba, Prince Edward Island, British Columbia, and the West Territory, have since been added.

Each province has a lieutenant-governor and a local legislature whole combining in the election of a general parliament, sitting at and presided over by a Governor-General of the entire "Dominion."

Divisions and Towns.—The provinces and chief to British North America are shown in the following table

| Provinces. | Chief Towns. |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. QUEBEC | <i>Quebec, Montreal.</i> |
| 2. ONTARIO | <i>Ottawa, Toronto, Kingston.</i> |
| 3. NEW BRUNSWICK | <i>St. John, Fredericton.</i> |
| 4. NOVA SCOTIA | <i>Halifax, Sydney.</i> |
| 5. PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND | <i>Charlotte Town.</i> |
| 6. { BRITISH COLUMBIA | <i>New Westminster.</i> |
| VANCOUVER ISLAND | <i>Victoria.</i> |
| 7. NORTH-WEST TERRITORY | <i>Battleford.</i> |
| 8. MANITOBA | <i>Winnipeg.</i> |
| 9. NEWFOUNDLAND | <i>St. John's.</i> |

1. **Quebec** includes that portion of the St. Lawrence valley towards the mouth of the river and below the junction of the . The principal towns are :—*Quebec*, the capital of the province, former capital of all Canada, on the north bank of the river St. Lawrence ; *Montreal*, farther up the St. Lawrence, on an island in the and *Three Rivers*, at the confluence of the St. Maurice and Lawrence.

2. **Ontario** lies between Quebec on the east, the North-West Territory on the north, and the Great Lakes on the south. Ontario is by most important province in British North America. The principal towns are :—*Ottawa*, the capital of the "Dominion of Canada,"

river Ottawa; *Toronto*, the provincial capital, on the north-west shore of Lake Ontario; and *Kingston* is situated at the outlet of the St. Lawrence from Lake Ontario.

3. **New Brunswick** borders on the western side of the Gulf of St. Lawrence, and is bounded on the south by the Bay of Fundy, on the east by the state of Maine, and on the north by the extreme south-eastern portion of the province of Quebec. The chief towns are:—*Fredericton*, the capital, on the river St. John; *St. John*, at the outlet of the river into the Bay of Fundy.

4. **Nova Scotia** is a peninsula lying to the south-east of New Brunswick. The adjoining island of **Cape Breton** is politically attached to Nova Scotia. The principal towns are:—*Halifax*, the capital of Nova Scotia; and *Sydney*, the chief town of Cape Breton Island.

5. **Prince Edward Island** is within the southern portion of the Gulf of St. Lawrence, adjacent to the shores of Nova Scotia and New Brunswick. The only town of importance is *Charlotte Town*, the capital.

6. **British Columbia** includes the tract of country lying between the Rocky Mountains and the Pacific Ocean, and extending northward from the United States frontier to one of the branches of the Peace River. *New Westminster*, on the Fraser, is the chief town; but the capital of the colony is *Victoria*, the chief town in Vancouver Island, which was formerly a distinct colony, but is now attached to British Columbia.

7. The **North-West Territory**, formerly called the *Hudson Bay Territory*, embraces a vast region, which stretches from Canada to the Rocky Mountains and the Arctic Ocean. It includes the whole tract of country watered by the rivers that fall into Hudson Bay (of which the *Nelson* and the *Churchill* are the principal), besides the valleys of the *Mackenzie*, *Coppermine*, and *Back* rivers, in the direction of the Polar Sea. *Lake Winnipeg* is within the southern portion of the territory. The great river *Saskatchewan*, formed by the junction of two branches which rise in the Rocky Mountains, flows into this lake on its north-western shore, as a stream called the Red River does from the southward. The river *Nelson* issues from the northern extremity of the lake, and connects it with Hudson Bay. The Hudson Bay Company maintain several fortified posts or stations, the principal of which is *Fort York*. Four districts have been recently formed out of the North-West Territory, viz., *Kewatin*, *Saskatchewan*, *Quapelle*, *Bow River*. The whole of these territories are at present under the rule of a Lieutenant-Governor and Council. The capital and seat of government is *Battleford*, on the Canadian Pacific railroad, at the junction of the Battle river and the North Saskatchewan.

8. The tract adjoining the southern end of Lake Winnipeg, formerly known as the *Red River Settlement*, was in 1870 formed into the province of **Manitoba**. The chief town and seat of government is *Winnipeg*, on the left bank of the Red River.

9. **Newfoundland** is a large island which forms the eastern limit of the Gulf of St. Lawrence, and is surrounded in other directions by the Atlantic Ocean. The cod-fishery on the Great Bank of Newfoundland is the most important in the world, and fishing is almost the only occupation of the people. *St. John's, Newfoundland*, is not only the capital of the colony, but is the only place deserving to be called a town which the island contains.

Labrador.—The extreme eastern part of the British territory in North America is the coast of *Labrador*, which is inhabited by Esquimaux.

Greenland.—The western coasts of *Greenland*, lying along Davis Strait from the neighbourhood of Cape Farewell northward to beyond Disco Island, belong to Denmark, and contain a few Danish settlements. The most northerly of these is *Uppernavik*, in lat. $72^{\circ} 50'$. The native population consists of Esquimaux.

Alaska embraces the north-western portion of the continent, and has since 1867 belonged to the United States. The total population of this vast territory, however, only amounts to about 30,000, 500 of whom are whites (mostly at *Sitka*), the rest being Indians or Esquimaux.

THE UNITED STATES.

The United States of North America embrace a vast and compact territory, which stretches entirely across the continent.

Boundaries.—Its boundaries are :—On the north, Canada and other portions of British America ; east, the Atlantic Ocean ; south, Mexico, and the waters of the Mexican Gulf ; west, the Pacific.

Extent.—The area of this immense region is 3,200,000 sq. m.

In addition, the United States acquired in 1867, by purchase from Russia, the large tract of country forming the Alaska territory, which includes above half a million square miles. With these acquisitions, the total area of the United States exceeds 3,800,000 square miles.

Natural Features.—The most important among the great natural features of the United States are—the *Rocky Mountains*, the *Alleghany Mountains*, the *valley of the Mississippi*, and the *Great Lakes* in the basin of the St. Lawrence.

1. The whole of the Alleghany system is within the United States. The vast region between the Alleghanies and the Rocky Mountains is watered by the Mississippi and its tributaries, and includes the chief part of the prairies.

2. The most important river of the United States is the *Mississippi*, which is joined by the *Missouri*, the *Ohio*, *Arkansas*, *Red River*, and numerous other navigable tributaries. The Mississippi forms the great highway of commerce for the Western States. Among the rivers that flow from the Alleghany Mountains into the Atlantic, the most important are the *Hudson*, *Delaware*, *Susquehanna*, and *Potomac*.

3. The rivers *Colorado*, *Sacramento*, and the lower portion of the *Columbia*, are to the west of the Rocky Mountains.

4. *Lake Michigan* is wholly within the United States. The other great lakes of the St. Lawrence basin (*Superior*, *Huron*, *Erie*, and *Ontario*) are on the border-line between the United States and the British possessions.

Climate.—The southern portions of the United States—towards the Gulf of Mexico—are hot; the middle and northerly portions temperate and healthy. The Atlantic coasts are characterised by great extremes of summer and winter temperature.

Productions.—The natural resources of this vast territory are very great. The *gold-fields* of California are among the richest in the world; on the Atlantic side, the States of Ohio, Pennsylvania, and Virginia include a vast *coal-field*, together with *iron* and other valuable ores.

Inhabitants.—The population in 1880 amounted to upwards of 50,000,000. Five-sixths of the number are of European (and chiefly British) descent. The English language is hence the prevailing tongue throughout the Union. About 4,000,000 of the population are negroes.

Education and Religion.—Education is general, and well advanced, especially in the North-Eastern or New England States. There is no established form of worship, but each of the various Christian Churches has its followers.

Industry.—The culture of the soil is the predominant branch of industrial pursuit.

In the Southern and South-Western States, *cotton*, *rice*, *tobacco*, and *sugar*—in the Middle and Northern States, *maize*, *wheat*, and other grains—are the principal articles of produce. The cotton crop is of immense value, and its export to Britain forms the most important branch of the foreign commerce of the Union. Tobacco, sugar, rice, wheat, and maize, are also largely exported. Manufactures flourish chiefly in the North-Eastern States.

Government.—The United States form a federal republic. The general government is vested in a President, elected every four years. The legislature consists of an elective Congress, embracing a Senate and a Chamber of Representatives.

Divisions and Towns.—The United States of North America are thirty-eight in number, each of them constituting a sovereign state, and the whole forming a federal republic. Besides the States, there are ten Territories, not yet sufficiently populated for admission to the Union.

The thirteen States which originally composed the Union were all within the eastern portion of the territory, now known as the United States—that is, along the line of the Atlantic coast.

These older States of the Union are distinguished, according to their relative position, as the North-Eastern, Middle, and Southern States. The States of later formation, for the most part within the Mississippi valley, are distinguished as Western States. Three States—California, Oregon, and Nevada—are beyond the Rocky Mountains, on the side of the Pacific.

1. The North-Eastern States are six in number :—

| States. | Towns. | States. | Towns. |
|-----------------|--------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| MAINE . | Augusta, Portland. | MASSACHUSETTS . | Boston, Lowell, |
| NEW HAMPSHIRE . | Concord, | RHODE ISLAND . | Springfield, |
| VERMONT . | Portsmouth. | CONNECTICUT | Providence, |
| | Montpelier, | | Newport. |
| | Burlington. | | Newhaven, |
| | | | Hartford. |

2. The Middle States are five in number :—

| | | | |
|--------------|--------------------------------------|------------------------|--------------------|
| NEW YORK . | Albany, New York, | DELAWARE . | Dover, Wilmington. |
| NEW JERSEY . | Troy, Buffalo. | MARYLAND . | Annapolis, |
| PENNSYLVANIA | Trenton, Newark. | | Baltimore. |
| | Harrisburg, Philadelphia, Pittsburgh | District of COLUMBIA . | Washington. |

3. The Southern States are six in number :—

| | | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------|------------------|-----------------------|
| VIRGINIA (Eastern) . | Richmond, Petersburg. | SOUTH CAROLINA . | Columbia, Charleston. |
| VIRGINIA (Western) . | Wheeling. | GEORGIA . | Milledgeville, |
| NORTH CAROLINA . | Raleigh, | FLORIDA . | Savannah, |
| | Wilmington. | | Tallahassee, |
| | | | St. Augustine. |

4. The Western States are eighteen in number :—

| | | | |
|-------------|-------------------|---------------|----------------------|
| MINNESOTA . | St. Paul. | NERRASKA . | Omaha. |
| WISCONSIN . | Madison. | COLORADO . | Denver. |
| IOWA . | Milwaukee. | KENTUCKY . | Frankfort, |
| INDIANA . | Iowa City, | | Louisville. |
| ILLINOIS . | Burlington. | TENNESSEE . | Nashville. |
| | Indianapolis. | ALABAMA . | Montgomery, |
| | Springfield, | | Mobile. |
| MICHIGAN . | Chicago. | MISSISSIPPI . | Jackson, Columbus |
| OHIO . | Lansing, Detroit. | MISSOURI . | Jefferson, St. Louis |
| | Columbus, | LOUISIANA . | New Orleans. |
| | Cincinnati. | ARKANSAS . | Little Rock. |
| KANSAS . | Topeka. | TEXAS . | Austin, Galveston. |

5. The Pacific States (west of the Rocky Mountains) are :—

| | | | |
|--------------|----------------------------|----------|-----------------|
| CALIFORNIA . | Sacramento, San Francisco. | OREGON . | Salem. |
| | | NEVADA . | Carson, Austin. |

6. The Territories, ten in number, are :—

| | | | |
|--------------|-------------|--------------|-----------------|
| WASHINGTON . | Olympia. | UTAH . | Salt Lake City. |
| IDAHO . | Boise City. | ARIZONA . | Tucson. |
| MONTANA . | Virginia. | NEW MEXICO . | Santa Fé. |
| DACOTAH . | Yankton. | | |
| WYOMING . | Benton. | ALASKA . | Sitka. |

WASHINGTON, on the river Potomac, is the political capital of the United States, but is not otherwise important. The largest city, and the great emporium of the foreign commerce of the Union, is NEW YORK, at the mouth of the river Hudson. New York has above 1,200,000 inhabitants, and is the largest city in the New World.

Among the other principal cities, the most considerable are—*Philadelphia, Boston, Baltimore, Charleston, New Orleans, St. Louis, Cincinnati, Chicago*, and *San Francisco*. Philadelphia, situated at the junction of the Delaware and Schuylkill rivers, is the second city of the Union in size and population. Boston is the largest city of the New England States, and is a great seat of manufacturing and commercial industry. New Orleans is on the delta of the Mississippi, and is the great outlet for the agricultural produce of its immense valley. St. Louis (on the Mississippi), Cincinnati (on the Ohio), and Chicago (on the south-west shore of Lake Michigan), are the largest inland cities of the Union.

MEXICO.

Boundaries.—Mexico is bounded on the north by the States, on the west and south by the Pacific, and on the east by the Mexican Gulf.

Extent.—Mexico has an area of about 740,000 square miles, or about twelve times that of England and Wales.

Natural Features.—Mexico consists of a high plateau, bordering a strip of lowland upon either side.

From the low coast-plain, the country rises in successive terraces towards the interior, reaching in the more elevated portions from 2,000 to 9,000 feet above the sea. There are no large rivers.

Climate.—The climate of Mexico is hot, moist, and unhealthy in the low plains of the coast, but temperate and healthy in the districts of the interior.

Productions.—The natural productions, both mineral and vegetable, are exceedingly valuable. There are numerous *gold* and *silver* mines formerly worked to great advantage. *Vanilla*, *cocoa*, *jalapa*, *cochineal-plant* (a species of cactus), are native to Mexico. *Coffee*, *indigo*, and the *sugar-cane* flourish.

Inhabitants.—The population numbers about 9,000,000, the great majority either Indians or people of mixed Indian and Spanish race. The whites are of Spanish descent.

Industry.—Every branch of industry is at the lowest ebb, and has exhibited, during many years past, every possible symptom of neglect, decay, and social disorganisation. Some *cochineal*, and amount of the precious metals, are still exported.

Government.—Mexico forms a federal republic, with an elective president.

Divisions and Towns.—Mexico until a recent date was a nominal confederation of states, twenty-two in number, but has recently been divided into fifty departments, and the most cases after the towns which they include.

Among the towns (few of which are of any other than local importance) the principal are MEXICO, the capital; *Vera Cruz*, *Tampico*, *Acapulco*, and *Mazatlan*, the principal seaports. Vera Cruz and Tampico are on the shore of the Gulf of Mexico; Acapulco and Mazatlan, on the Pacific.

YUCATAN, the easternmost of the Mexican provinces, has upon several occasions assumed the rank of an independent state. Its chief towns of Merida and Campeachy, each the capital of a state.

CENTRAL AMERICA.

Boundaries.—Central America is bounded by Mexico on the *north*, the Caribbean Sea on the *east*, and the Pacific Ocean on the *west* and *south*.

Extent.—The *area* of this territory is estimated at 186,000 square miles, or about three times that of England and Wales.

Natural Features.—Central America consists of interior plateaus, with low plains adjoining the coast.

1. The plateaus are inferior in height to those of Mexico, but they are bordered on the west by high mountains. Part of the low plain along the Atlantic is known as the Mosquito Coast.

2. The most important river is the *San Juan*, which flows from the large lake of Nicaragua into the Caribbean Sea. Steam-vessels navigate this river and lake, and thus reach within a short distance of the Pacific.

3. The climate and natural productions of Central America bear a general resemblance to those of Mexico. The coasts are hot and unhealthy, while the elevated interior is comparatively temperate.

Inhabitants.—The total population is estimated at about 2,800,000. Three-fourths of the people are either Indians or Mestizoes. The whites are nearly all of Spanish descent.

Industry.—The industry of Central America is generally in a backward condition ; but *indigo*, *cochineal*, and *coffee*, with small quantities of *sugar*, *hides*, *Nicaragua wood*, *mahogany*, *balsam*, and *sarsaparilla*, are exported.

Divisions.—Five distinct states and one British colony are included within Central America. These, with their chief towns, are shown in the following table :—

| States. | Chief Towns. |
|----------------------------|--|
| GUATEMALA | { New Guatemala, Old Guatemala, Istapa, St. Thomas. |
| SAN SALVADOR | Salvador. |
| BRITISH HONDURAS | Belize. |
| HONDURAS | Comayagua, Truxillo, Onoa. |
| NICARAGUA | Managua, Leon, Granada. |
| COSTA RICA | San José. |

1. **Guatemala** is the most northerly of these states, and has a population of about 2,000,000, only one-fourth of whom are of European descent. The capital, *New Guatemala*, is of larger size than any other place in Central America.

2. **San Salvador** is the smallest of the states of Central America. Its population is estimated at 600,000. The capital, *San Salvador*, was partially destroyed by an earthquake in 1873. The principal port is *La Libertad*.

3. **British Honduras** is a possession of the British Crown, and is bounded on the east by the sea, and on all other sides by Guatemala. It has about 25,000 inhabitants, mostly negroes. The capital is *Belize*.

4. **Honduras** lies between Guatemala and Nicaragua, and has a population of 250,000. The capital is *Comayagua*. The chief ports are *Truxillo* and *Omoa*.

5. **Nicaragua** is the largest of these states. Its population, however, only amounts to 250,000, of whom but a small number are of European descent. The present capital is *Managua*, situated near the southern shore of Lake Managua. *Leon*, the old capital, is now partly in ruins. At the mouth of the San Juan river is the port of *Grey Town*.

6. **Costa Rica**, the most southerly of these states, extends across the isthmus, and has a population of about 190,000. *San José* is the capital. The chief ports are *Limon* and *Punta Arenas*.

THE WEST INDIES.

The West Indies are a vast insular region, washed by the waters of the Atlantic Ocean, the Caribbean Sea, and the Gulf of Mexico. Four of the islands of the West Indies are of much larger size than the others. These are—*Cuba*, *Hayti*, *Jamaica*, and *Porto Rico*. The smaller islands are distinguished as the *Windward Islands*, the *Leeward Islands*, and the *Bahama* chain.

Natural Features.—All the islands of the West Indies are more or less mountainous, with the exception of the Bahamas and Barbados.

Climate.—The climate of the West Indies is thoroughly tropical. The dry and rainy seasons follow one another with unfailing regularity, and the quantity of rain that falls within the latter period is very great.

Productions.—The most valuable productions are those that belong to the vegetable world. *Manioc*, *arum* (or taro), *sweet potato*, *arrow-root*, *maize*, *pine-apple*, *pimento*, *ginger*, *cocoa*, *vanilla*, the *tamarind*,

guava, cocoa-nut palm, indigo, and tobacco, are indigenous to the soil. The sugar-cane, coffee, cocoa, plantain, and bread-fruit, all flourish.

Inhabitants.—The population of the West Indies amounts, in the total, to nearly three millions. Two-thirds of the total population are negroes; the remaining third, whites and mulattoes—the latter of mixed European and negro blood.

Industry.—The chief articles of commercial produce are *sugar, rum, molasses, and coffee*—the three first derived from the sugar-cane, which is cultivated to an immense extent in Cuba, and in greater or less degree throughout the archipelago. *Cocoa, tobacco, cotton, and spices*, chiefly *ginger and pimento*, are supplied to a less amount.

With the exception of Hayti, which forms two independent states, and Margarita, which belongs to Venezuela, the West India Islands belong to various nations of Europe.

1. **Spain** possesses the islands of *Cuba and Porto Rico*. *Cuba* has an area of 43,000 square miles—only one-seventh part less than England. The capital is *Havannah*, the largest city in the West Indies. The chief town of *Porto Rico* is *San Juan*.

2. **Great Britain** possesses, of the larger islands, *Jamaica*; and of the smaller islands, *Trinidad, Tobago, Barbadoes, Grenada, St. Vincent, St. Lucia, Dominica, Antigua, Barbuda, Montserrat, Nevis, St. Christopher*, three of the *Virgin Islands*, and the *Bahamas*.

Jamaica is 4,300 square miles in area, or four-fifths the size of Yorkshire. *Kingstown*, on the south coast, is the capital and chief seat of the commerce of *Jamaica*; *Spanish Town*, the former capital, is in the interior, to the west of *Kingstown*. The islands that extend from *Trinidad* to *St. Lucia* are included under the name of the *Windward Islands*. Their names and chief towns are:—

| | | | |
|----------------|----------------|-------------------|-------------|
| TRINIDAD . . . | Port of Spain. | GRENADA . . . | St. George. |
| TOBAGO . . . | Scarborough. | ST. VINCENT . . . | Kingstown. |
| BARBADOS . . . | Bridgetown. | ST. LUCIA . . . | Castries. |

Barbados is the most productive island of the *Windward chain*.

The *Leeward Islands* are those that extend from *Dominica* to the group of the *Virgin Islands*, namely:—

| | | | |
|------------------|--------------|------------------|--------------|
| DOMINICA . . . | Roseau. | ST. CHRISTOPHER. | Basse-terre. |
| ANTIGUA . . . | St. John. | VIRGIN ISLANDS— | |
| BARBUDA. | | Tortola . . . | Road Town. |
| MONTSERRAT . . . | Plymouth. | Virgin-gorda. | |
| NEVIS . . . | Charlestown. | Anegada. | |

Antigua is the most important island of the Leeward chain. The chief town of the Bahamas is *Nassau*, on New Providence.

3. **France** possesses *Martinique*, *Guadaloupe* and its dependencies, *St. Bartholomew*, and part of the island of *St. Martin*.

The capital of Martinique is *Port Royal*, but *St. Pierre* is of larger size. *Basse-terre* is the capital of Guadaloupe. The islands of *Maria-galant* and *Desirade* are dependencies of Guadaloupe.

4. **Holland** possesses part of *St. Martin*, with the islands of *Saba*, *St. Eustatius*, *Curaçao*, *Oruba*, and *Buen Ayre*—the three last-named lying near the coast of South America. The chief town of Curaçao (the largest of the Dutch islands) is *Wallenstadt*.

5. **Denmark** possesses *Santa Cruz*, together with the smaller islands of *St. Thomas* and *St. John*, two of the Virgin Islands.

The chief town of Santa Cruz is *Christianstadt*. The remaining islands of the Virgin group belong to Britain.

HAYTI (or San Domingo) has an area of 30,000 square miles—nearly as great as that of Ireland; but its population is only about 820,000. It is divided into two portions. The western part of the island forms the Republic of Hayti, of which the town of *Port-au-Prince* is the capital. The eastern half forms the DOMINICAN REPUBLIC, of which *San Domingo* is the capital. The population of the island consists almost entirely of negroes and mulattoes.

The **BERMUDA ISLANDS**, situated in the middle of the Atlantic, 600 miles east of the American continent, belong to Britain. They produce the finest arrowroot. Their chief town is *Hamilton*.

SOUTH AMERICA.

The continent of South America forms the southern half of the New World. It is joined to North America by the narrow Isthmus of Panama.

Boundaries.—South America is bounded on the *north* by the Caribbean Sea and the Atlantic Ocean, on the *east* by the Atlantic Ocean, on the *west* by the Pacific.

Extent.—South America has an area of 7,000,000 square miles, and is therefore nearly twice the size of Europe.

Coast-line.—The coasts of South America are (like those of Africa) remarkably regular and unbroken.

1. **Capes.**—Cape Gallinas is the most *northerly* point of the continent, Cape Branco the most *easterly*, and Cape Parina the most *westerly*. Cape Froward is the most *southerly* point of the mainland; but Cape Horn (which is the southernmost point of an extensive group of islands) is a more celebrated and better known promontory.

2. **Inlets.**—*On the north*: the Gulfs of Darien, Maracaybo, and Paria. *On the west*: the Gulfs of Panama and Guayaquil.

3. **Straits.**—The *Strait of Magellan*, between Tierra del Fuego and the mainland, and the *Strait of Le Maire*, between Tierra del Fuego and Staten Island.

Islands.—The principal islands are:—

1. *On the north*: Margarita, Curaçao, &c.
2. *On the south*: Tierra del Fuego.
3. *On the east*: Falkland Islands, Georgia Islands.
4. *On the west*: Patagonian Archipelago, Chiloe Island, Juan Fernandez, and the Galapagos Islands.

Natural Features.—South America has three mountain systems:—(1) The *Andes*, which are the highest mountains in the New World; (2) the *Mountains of Guiana*; (3) the *Mountains of Brazil*.

The *Andes* stretch along the whole western side of South America. Their highest summit—*Sorata*, on the western border of Bolivia—reaches 24,800 feet, and several others are above 20,000 feet. They rise throughout above the line of perpetual snow. Many of the mountains are active volcanoes, and earthquakes frequently occur.

Tablelands.—The tablelands of South America are principally within the region traversed by the Andes. The highest is the plateau of Titicaca (within Peru and Bolivia), which contains the large lake of Titicaca, at an elevation of nearly 18,000 feet. The plateau of Quito is 9,000 feet.

Lowland Plains.—These stretch through the interior of the continent, and separate the Andes from the mountain-systems of Guiana and Brazil. They embrace three great divisions:—

1. The *llanos*, or grassy plains of the Orinoco valley.
2. The *selvas*, or forest plains of the Amazon valley.
3. The *pampas*, or plains of the La Plata region.

. The *llanos* (or savannahs) are vast meadows, like the prairies of North America. The *selvas* are regions covered with a dense growth of natural forest. The *pampas*, according to the changes of the season, are alternately covered with herbage, or with thistles of gigantic size.

Rivers.—The chief rivers of South America, named in succession from the northward, are as follow :—

| | | | |
|------------|----------------|------------|-----------|
| Magdalena. | Corentyn. | La Plata { | Uruguay. |
| Orinoco. | Surinam. | | Parana. |
| Essequibo. | Maroni. | Colorado. | Paraguay. |
| Demerara. | Amazon. | | |
| Berbice. | San Francisco. | Negro. | |

The river *Magdalena* flows into the Caribbean Sea, which is a gulf of the Atlantic. All the others terminate directly in the Atlantic Ocean.

The *Amazon*, the *Orinoco*, and the *Rio de la Plata*, are superior in magnitude to any other rivers of South America. The *Amazon* is 3,900 miles long ; it thus nearly rivals the Mississippi in length of channel, and greatly exceeds any of the rivers of the Old World. The *Rio de la Plata* is an immense estuary, formed by the junction of the rivers Parana and Uruguay.

Lakes.—These are few in number. The largest is *Lake Titicaca*.

Climate.—Two-thirds of South America fall within the torrid zone, and its climate is therefore, upon the whole, warmer than that of North America.

Towards the south, however, it becomes gradually more temperate, and the extreme south is cold. The quantity of rain that falls within its tropical regions is very great, exceeding, in some localities (as in Guiana and parts of Brazil), the rain-fall of any other part of the globe.

Productions.—Extremely rich and varied.

1. **Metals and Minerals.**—South America is rich in the precious metals. The whole region traversed by the Andes contains mines of *gold* and *silver*, besides abundant ores of *copper*, *iron*, *lead*, and other valuable metals. Chili has copper mines of great value, and also *coal-fields*. Brazil furnishes *gold*, *diamonds*, and other precious stones.

2. **Vegetation.**—*Maize*, *cassava* (or manioc), *cocoa*, *tobacco*, and the *potato*, are the characteristic food-plants of South America. The various species of cinchona (or Peruvian bark), valued for their medicinal properties, are native to its western coasts. The *caoutchouc* (or India-rubber) tree, mahogany, and log-wood, are native to Brazil. The *matt-shrub* of Paraguay (or yerba-maté) serves in South America a purpose similar to the tea-plant of the Old World.

3. **Zoology.**—(1.) The *puma* and the *jaguar* (or ounce), both of them native also to the wooded regions of Mexico and Central America, are the most formidable of the South American carnivora. The *llama* is peculiar to South America. The proper llama, and also the various species known as the *alpaca*, *vicuna*, and *guanaco*, all belong to the region of the higher Andes. The llama is used as a beast of burden.

(2.) The *tapir*, *sloth*, *ant-eater*, and *armadillo*, are natives of South America. *Monkeys* are exceedingly numerous in the forests of Brazil, but are of different species from the like animals in the eastern half of the globe. The *opossums*, which abound in the forests of South America, and one variety of which is common in the northern half of the New World, are found nowhere else but in Australia.

(3.) Both reptile and insect life are favoured by the combined heat and moisture—with its consequent luxuriance of vegetation—of tropical South America. The *boa-constrictor* is found in the swampy plains, and the *alligator* abounds in most of its rivers.

Inhabitants.—Total population, about 30,000,000.

About a third of the whole are of European race, and almost exclusively of Spanish and Portuguese origin. With the exception of Brazil, which was colonised by Portugal, nearly all South America was formerly under Spanish rule.

The native Indian race perhaps numbers about 5,000,000. The negro race (chiefly found in Brazil) includes between three and four millions. Mixed races, or *mestizoes*—principally of European and Indian blood—make up the remainder.

Divisions.—South America is divided into the following countries:—

| | | |
|------------|----------|------------|
| BRAZIL. | ECUADOR. | LA PLATA. |
| GUIANA. | PERU. | PARAGUAY. |
| VENEZUELA. | BOLIVIA. | URUGUAY. |
| COLUMBIA. | CHILL. | PATAGONIA. |

With the exception of Brazil, which is an empire; of Guiana, which is divided between the possession of three European nations; and of Patagonia, which is an uncivilised tract of country,—all the South American States are nominal republics. But in most instances the government is really a military despotism.

BRAZIL.

Brazil has an area of about 3,275,000 square miles, thus comprising nearly half of the continent.

Boundaries.—Brazil is bounded on the *north* by Colombia, Venezuela, and Guiana; on the *north-east* and *east* by the Atlantic Ocean; on the *south* and *south-west* by Uruguay, the La Plata Territory, and Paraguay; on the *west* by Bolivia, Peru, and Ecuador.

Coasts.—Generally regular and unbroken.

1. The principal capes are :—*Orange, St. Roque, and Frio.*

2. The chief inlets are :—*The estuaries of the Amazon, Para, Maranhao, and the Bays of Bahia and Rio Janeiro.*

Natural Features.—The great feature of Brazil consists in its vast plains, watered by some of the largest rivers in the world.

Mountains.—Few of its mountains exceed 3,000 feet, but the interior is for the most part a moderately elevated and undulating region.

Rivers.—The chief rivers are :—The *Amazon*, with its numerous tributaries ; the *San Francisco*, and the upper portions of the *Parana* and *Paraguay*. The longest among the tributaries of the *Amazon* is the *Madera* river. The *Amazon* is the longest river in the world.

Climate and Productions.—The climate is strictly tropical, and the soil, under the combined influences of heat and moisture, displays the most luxuriant fertility. Besides its rich *forests*, Brazil possesses *gold* and *diamonds*, with other *precious stones*.

Inhabitants.—Brazil has 11,000,000 inhabitants, of whom fewer than one-sixth are whites.

Race and Language.—More than half the total number are of negro race—the great bulk of them slaves. The remainder include Indians and mixed races. The whites are of Portuguese descent, and the Portuguese language is hence spoken.

Industry.—The industry of Brazil is chiefly agricultural.

Coffee, sugar, and cotton, are its staples of commercial produce, with smaller quantities of *rice, cocoa, maize, and tobacco*. The *cassava-bread*, made from the root of the *manioc*, is the chief food of the native Indian population. The trade with Britain is of high value.

Government.—Brazil is the only country in South America which is under a monarchical government. It forms an hereditary empire, with a free constitution.

Divisions and Towns.—Brazil includes twenty provinces. All its larger towns are situated on or near the coast.

The capital is RIO JANEIRO, seated on a bay of the Atlantic, which forms a magnificent harbour. It has nearly 300,000 inhabitants, and is the largest city of South America. The second city in size and commercial importance is *Bahia*, to the northward of Rio ; and the third place in these regards is *Pernambuco*, further north. The other principal towns are :—*Para*, at the mouth of the Rio de Para ; *San Paulo*, to the south-west of Rio ; and *San Pedro*, further to the south.

GUIANA.

Boundaries.—Guiana is bounded on the *north* and *north-east* by the Atlantic Ocean, on the *south* by Brazil, on the *west* by Brazil and Venezuela.

Surface.—The coast district of Guiana is a low and fertile plain, behind which the country rises towards the interior.

Rivers.—The rivers all flow north into the Atlantic. The principal are :—*Essequibo*, *Demerara*, *Berbice*, *Corentyn*, *Surinam*, and *Maroni*.

Climate.—The climate is thoroughly tropical.

Productions.—The wealth of Guiana consists in the produce of its soil. *Sugar*, *coffee*, *cotton*, and *tobacco*, are its chief staples. *Pepper*, *cloves*, *cinnamon*, and *nutmegs*, are produced in French Guiana.

Divisions.—Guiana is divided between the possession of Britain, Holland, and France.

1. **British Guiana** has a population of 250,000, chiefly negroes. The capital is GEORGETOWN, at the mouth of the river Demerara. *New Amsterdam*, on the river Berbice, is to the east of Georgetown.

2. **Dutch Guiana** has 70,000 inhabitants, mostly of negro race. Its chief town is *Paramaribo*, on the river Surinam.

3. **French Guiana** has about 32,000 inhabitants, principally of negro and native Indian race. Its chief town is *Cayenne*, situated on the island of that name, which adjoins the coast.

VENEZUELA.

Venezuela is bounded on the *north* by the Caribbean Sea, on the *east* by the Atlantic Ocean and British Guiana, on the *south* by Brazil and Colombia, and on the *west* by Colombia. The *area* of Venezuela is estimated at 400,000 square miles, which is seven times greater than that of England and Wales.

Natural Features.—Venezuela includes the greater part of the Orinoco valley, with its extensive savannahs or llanos, which are succeeded, at intervals, by forest-covered tracts of surprising richness.

Climate.—Hot, but not unhealthy.

Productions.—*Cocoa*, *tobacco*, *indigo*, *vanilla*, *cinchona* (or Jesuit's bark), and the *cochineal-plant*, are among its many valuable productions. *Wild horses* and *oxen* roam over its vast interior plains.

Inhabitants.—Venezuela has about 1,800,000 inhabitants, mostly Mestizoes, or half-caste race (of mixed Spanish and Indian blood).

Industry.—The chief articles of commercial produce are *sugar, cocoa, coffee, tobacco, and cotton, with hides and cattle.*

Towns.—The capital of Venezuela is the city of CARACAS. *La Guayra* is its port. The only other towns of any note are:—*Cumana, Barcelona, Valencia, and Maracaybo.*

COLOMBIA.

The UNITED STATES OF COLOMBIA (formerly called New Granada) are bounded on the *north* by the Caribbean Sea, *east* by Venezuela, *south* by Brazil and Ecuador, and on the *west* by the Pacific Ocean. The *area* is estimated at 504,000 square miles, or about eight times that of England and Wales.

Natural Features.—The great natural features are the *Andes*—the plain along their western base—and the valley of the *Magdalena*.

Climate.—The lowland portions of Colombia are covered with a dense forest, and have an intensely hot climate; but the mountain-region is comparatively cool.

Productions.—The mineral wealth of this country is very great, and includes ores of *iron, copper, and lead*, as well as the precious metals. The agricultural resources are of still higher value. The commercial produce of the country consists of *cocoa, coffee, cinchona* (or bark), *indigo, tobacco, and cotton*, with a small amount of *gold* and other metals.

Inhabitants.—The population exceeds 3,900,000.

Towns.—The capital of New Granada is SANTA FE DE BOGOTA, situated on one of the high plateaux of the Andes. The chief seaport is *Cartagena*.

The larger part of the *Isthmus of Panama* falls within the *State of Panama*, which forms one of the members of the Colombian confederation.

A railway connects the city of *Panama* with the rising town of *Aspinwall*, or Colon, on the opposite side of the isthmus. A ship canal is now being constructed across the isthmus, which, when completed, will, to a large extent, supersede the Cape Horn route to and from the Pacific.

ECUADOR.

The republic of ECUADOR is bounded on the *north* by Colombia, on the *east* by Brazil, on the *south* by Peru, and on the *west* by the Pacific Ocean. The *area* of Ecuador is nearly 250,000 square miles, or four times that of England and Wales.

Natural Features.—Ecuador includes the most elevated part of the *Andes*, with plains extending on the one side to the waters of the Pacific, and on the other into the great lowland of the Amazon basin. The river *Amazon* forms the chief part of the southern boundary.

Climate.—The mountain-region of Ecuador enjoys a cool climate; but the plains of the coast are heated and moist.

Productions.—The natural productions resemble those of Colombia. The *cinchonas* abound in the extensive forests.

Inhabitants.—Ecuador has about 1,000,000 inhabitants.

Industry.—The produce of the country is almost exclusively agricultural, and consists principally of *cocoa* and *coffee*, with *tobacco*, *hides*, and *Peruvian bark*.

Towns.—The capital city of Ecuador is QUITO, situated on the interior plateau, nearly under the line of the equator. The chief seaport is *Guayaquil*.

* * Two of the three countries last described—*Venezuela* and *Ecuador*—nominally form republics, each under an elective presidency. *Colombia* or New Granada consists of a confederation of nine distinct states. All three countries were formerly under Spanish rule. In all, the white population is Spanish, and the Spanish language is uniformly spoken. The Roman Catholic religion is followed.

PERU.

PERU is bounded on the *north* by Ecuador; on the *east* by Brazil and Bolivia; on the *south* by Bolivia; on the *west* and *south-west* by the Pacific Ocean. Its *area* is 500,000 square miles, about nine times the size of England and Wales.

Natural Features.—Peru includes—1. A large portion of the *Andes*, comprehending some of the highest summits of the mountain-system. 2. A plain along the coast of the Pacific, between the mountains and the sea. 3. A more extensive plain, stretching east from the mountains into the interior of the continent.

The coast-plain throughout Peru is an arid, rainless desert, with a climate that is intensely hot. But, with this exception, both countries possess great fertility. The watered plains to the east of the Andes are among the most productive in the world. The climate of the mountain-region is cold. Peru contains abundant mineral wealth. *Gums, balsams, cinchona-bark, vanilla, sarsaparilla*, and the *caoutchouc-tree*, abound in Peru.

Inhabitants.—Peru has about 2,700,000 inhabitants. The Indian and mixed races are much more numerous than whites, who are exclusively of Spanish descent.

Industry.—Comparatively few of the mines are now worked. *Coffee, cocoa, tobacco, sugar, and maize*, are objects of cultivation, and, with *metals, bark*, and the *wool* of the alpaca, are exported. *Guano* is largely exported. The country is at present entirely disorganised, owing to the recent disastrous war with Chili.

Towns.—The chief towns of Peru are: *Lima, Callao, Cuzco, Arequipa, Pasco, and Arica*. *LIMA*, the capital, lies six miles inland from the Pacific: *Callao* is its port. *Cuzco*, the ancient capital of the Incas, is an inland city, lying at an elevation of 11,000 feet above the sea.

BOLIVIA.

BOLIVIA is bounded on the *north* by Peru; on the *north-east* and *east* by Brazil; on the *south* by La Plata; and on the *west* chiefly by Peru. The *area* of Bolivia is about 842,000 square miles, or nearly 15 times that of England and Wales.

Natural Features.—Some of the highest portions of the *Andes* are within Bolivia. The border-line between Peru and Bolivia crosses the high *Tableland of Titicaca*, the larger portion of which is within the latter state. Upon either side of the tableland are ranged some of the highest summits of the mountain-system. One of the number—the peak of *Sorata*—is now known to surpass in height even *Aconcagua*, which was formerly regarded as the culminating summit of the western world.

Climate and Productions.—Similar to those of Peru.

Inhabitants.—The population of Bolivia is about 2,000,000, chiefly composed of Indians and mixed races.

Towns.—The capital of Bolivia is *SUORE* (formerly *Chuquisaca*), situated on the interior tableland. Among the other towns are *Potosí, La Paz*, and *Cobija*. The last-named is the only seaport which Bolivia possesses. It is now (1881) held by the *Chilians*.

* * Both Peru and Bolivia are nominally republics, the supreme executive authority in each being confided to an elective president. In reality, in the case of these and other South American states, the government has become a military despotism. In both countries the Roman Catholic religion is uniformly followed.

CHILL

CHILI is a narrow strip of country upon the western seaboard of South America, between the Andes and the Pacific Ocean. Its *area* is not less than 130,000 square miles, which is more than twice the size of England and Wales.

1. The great feature of Chili is the stupendous cordillera which forms its eastern border. The Chilian Andes include Aconcagua, one of the highest mountains in the New World: a great many of their summits are active volcanoes. Chili is generally fertile; but its extreme northern part is the arid Desert of Atacama. The longest river is the Biobio.

2. The climate is temperate and healthy, especially towards the south. *Copper* and *coal* are among the mineral produce of Chili.

3. The inhabitants number about 2,000,000, of whom a large proportion are whites, of Spanish descent. The commerce is considerable: *copper-ore*, *silver*, *hides*, *wheat*, *flour*, and *jerked beef*, are exported.

Government.—Chili (like all the other states of Spanish America) is a republic, under an elective president.

Towns.—The capital of Chili is SANTIAGO, an inland city. The chief ports are *Valparaiso*, *Concepcion*, and *Cochimbo*.

LA PLATA, OR THE ARGENTINE CONFEDERATION.

LA PLATA embraces a confederacy of states, which are together entitled the ARGENTINE REPUBLIC, or the United Provinces of La Plata. It is bounded on the *north* by Bolivia; on the *west* by Chili; on the *south* by Patagonia; and on the *east* by Paraguay, Brazil, and Uruguay. The total *area* is 803,000 square miles, or 14 times that of England and Wales.

Surface.—The greater part of La Plata is an immense plain. This plain includes, in the south, the region of the Pampas, and, in the north, the larger portion of an extensive tract called the *Gran Chaco*—a succession of grassy plains, of the highest natural fertility, though tenanted only by wild beasts, or equally wild Indians.

Rivers.—The rivers of La Plata are of first-rate magnitude. Among them are the *Paraguay*, the *Paraná*, and the *Uruguay*, the three great feeders of the estuary entitled the river Plate (Rio de la Plata).

Climate.—The climate is temperate.

Inhabitants.—This extensive region has fewer than 2,000,000 inhabitants—a large proportion of whom are whites.

Productions.—The vast herds of oxen and horses that roam over its plains are the chief wealth of La Plata. Its commercial productions are principally horse and ox hides, horse-hair, horns, wool, tallow, dried beef, and furs.

Divisions.—The Argentine Confederation embraces fourteen provinces, each nominally a distinct state. Buenos Ayres ranks as the head of the confederation, and the city of that name is the federal capital.

The State of BUENOS AYRES—the head of the Argentine Confederation—includes the south bank of the Rio de la Plata, and extends thence along the Atlantic coast as far as the river Negro. It has a population of 350,000. The city of *Buenos Ayres*, on the south bank of the river Plate, is the chief out-port for the produce of the La Plata territory.

Two of the provinces which formerly belonged to the Argentine Confederation have become separated from the federal union, and rank as independent states. These are Paraguay and Uruguay.

1. **Paraguay** is a tract of country enclosed between the rivers Paraná and Paraguay, and bordered on the north and west by Brazil. Population, 250,000. The capital is ASSUMPTION, on the river Paraguay.

2. **Uruguay** is bordered by the Rio de la Plata, the Atlantic Ocean, and Brazil. It has fewer than 200,000 inhabitants. The chief town is *Monte Video*.

Patagonia, the extreme south part of the American continent, is a barren region, thinly inhabited by a few tribes of uncivilised Indians. The sovereignty over it is vested in the Argentine Confederation.

The **Falkland Islands** belong to Britain. They are situated in the midst of a stormy sea, and furnish little beyond oxen and horses, but are occasionally visited by whaling ships and other vessels that pass round Cape Horn. They contain the port of *Stanley*.

AUSTRALIA.

AUSTRALIA is within the southern hemisphere. It is the smallest of the continents, and is the only one of them that is situated wholly to the south of the equator.

Boundaries.—Australia is bounded by the ocean on every side—by the Pacific Ocean on the *east*; the Indian Ocean on the *west* and *north-west*; by the Southern Ocean on the *south*.

Extent.—Its *area* is about 3,000,000 square miles, which is more than three-fourths the size of Europe.

Coasts.—The coasts of Australia are solid and unbroken.

1. **Capes.**—Cape York, the extreme north point of Australia; Cape Byron, the most easterly point; Cape Howe, in the south-east; Cape Wilson, the southernmost point; Cape Leeuwin, in the south-west; and Steep Point, the westernmost extremity.

2. **Inlets.**—On the *north*, the Gulf of Carpentaria; on the *south*, St. Vincent Gulf and Spencer Gulf; on the *west*, Shark Bay.

3. **Straits.**—Torres Strait, in the *north*; and Bass Strait, in the *south*.

4. **Islands.**—Groote Eylandt, Bathurst and Melville Islands, on the north; Dampier Archipelago and Dirk Hartog Island, on the west; Kangaroo Island and Tasmania, on the south; and Great Sandy Island, on the east.

Natural Features.—The high grounds of Australia lie near the coasts, and in the general direction of north and south. Those near the eastern coasts form a continuous chain, different portions of which bear the following names:—

1. The **Australian Alps** are partly within Victoria, and partly within New South Wales. They are the highest known mountains in Australia: *Mount Kosciusko*, their loftiest summit, is 6,500 feet above the sea.

2. The **Blue Mountains** are to the northward of the Australian Alps, and within New South Wales. They seldom exceed 3,000 feet.

3. The **Liverpool Range** is still farther north, and also within New South Wales.

. Upon the inland side of the mountains, the country exhibits, for the most part, vast plains which stretch towards the distant interior. These plains are generally covered with herbage, and portions of them are

thinly wooded. Some parts of the central interior are arid and desert; but extensive tracts of country, well suited for pasturage, have been discovered within recent years.

Rivers.—The rivers of Australia are unequal in size to those of other regions, and their volume of water undergoes great variation with the seasons of the year. The principal are:—

1. *Flowing into the Southern Ocean*:—The Murray, which is 1,200 miles long. Chief tributaries—Murrumbidgee, Lachlan, and Darling.

2. *Flowing into the Pacific Ocean*:—The Shoalhaven, Hawkesbury, Hunter, Macleay, Clarence, Brisbane, Fitzroy, and the Burdekin.

3. *Flowing into the Indian Ocean*:—The Swan, Murchison, Gascoyne, Ashburton, Fitzroy, and Victoria.

4. *Flowing into the Gulf of Carpentaria*:—Roper, Flinders, and Mitchell.

Lakes.—Lake Alexandrina is the largest lake in Australia. The other lakes are only salt marshes, or mere surface ponds, with dry beds during the larger portion of the year. Of these the most extensive are lakes Eyre, Torrens, Gairdner, and Lake Amadeus.

Climate.—The prevailing characteristic of the climate is intense aridity. The air of Australia is almost uniformly warm, dry, and healthy.

1. Nearly one-half of Australia falls within the torrid zone. The whole of Australia experiences a high temperature; but, from its situation in the southern hemisphere, the amount of heat diminishes from north to south, instead of from south to north. The southernmost parts of Australia are the coolest.

2. The populated portions of Australia—that is, Victoria, New South Wales, South Australia, and Western Australia—have a climate which bears much resemblance to that of southern Europe. Intensely hot winds, generated in the arid plains of the interior, sometimes blow, but are seldom of more than two or three days' continuance. The rains fall with great violence during the period comprehended between May and August; the rest of the year is dry.

Natural Productions.—The mineral wealth of Australia equals that of any of the other continents; its animal and vegetable productions are inferior, and differ in many respects from those of the rest of the globe.

1. **Metals and Minerals.**—Australia has abundant mineral wealth. The gold-fields of Victoria rival those of California, and the copper-ore

of South Australia is of unsurpassed richness. *Gold* is found in New South Wales and Queensland, but much less abundantly than in Victoria. Other metals—*iron*, *copper*, *lead*, and *tin*, with *coal*—occur in the settled portions of Australia.

2. **Vegetation.**—The native vegetation of Australia is altogether different from that of other parts of the globe. With scarcely an exception, the plants that are indigenous to its soil are valueless as food. Many of its trees, however, yield valuable timber: those most abundant are *gum-trees* and *acacias*. All the grains and fruits that belong to southern Europe and similar regions of sub-tropical temperature flourish in the Australian soil. The *vine*, *orange*, *fig*, *olive*, and *peach*, grow in unsurpassed luxuriance. Both *wheat* and *maize* return abundant crops.

3. **Zoology.**—The largest animal native to Australia is the *kangaroo*, which is found in no other part of the world. Two-thirds of the native animals of Australia are either kangaroos or opossums—both of them belonging to an order of animals called *marsupial*, which possess the singular habit of carrying their young in a kind of pouch or bag under the neck. There is a native dog, which is being fast exterminated by the settlers, to prevent the injuries which it inflicts upon their flocks. The *sheep*, *ox*, *goat*, *pig*, and *horse*, now numerously reared in Australia, are all descended from animals that were first taken thither by Europeans. The wool of the sheep is (with the exception of gold) the most valuable article of Australian produce. There is a kind of ostrich (the *emu*) native to Australia; but the birds, as well as the quadrupeds, that are native to this singular region, are altogether unlike those of other parts of the globe.

Inhabitants.—Most of the present inhabitants of Australia are of British descent. It is little more than three-quarters of a century since the colonisation of this distant region commenced (in 1788), and already there are above 2,750,000 British subjects speaking the English language, and following the ordinary usages of English life.

The aboriginal natives of Australia are among the most degraded members of the human race. They are few in number, and are rapidly diminishing. The scattered tribes that still wander over the vast interior obtain a scanty subsistence from such means as the forests or river-beds of their native land afford. A few roots and berries, with shell-fish, insects, grubs, and other objects repulsive to civilised tastes, are the sole native resources of the Australian savage in this respect. The aborigines of Australia belong to the Papuan (or Austral-Negro) race. Their skins are of dark colour—almost black—and their stature below the average of Europeans.

Divisions.—The settled portions of Australia are divided into the following provinces, each of which constitutes a distinct colony, under a governor appointed by the British Crown :—

| Colonies. | Towns. |
|-------------------------|---|
| NEW SOUTH WALES | Sydney, Newcastle, Bathurst, Goulburn. |
| QUEENSLAND | Brisbane, Rockhampton, Maryborough. |
| VICTORIA | Melbourne, Geelong, Belfast, Castlemaine. |
| SOUTH AUSTRALIA | Adelaide, Port Lincoln, Port Elliot. |
| WESTERN AUSTRALIA . . . | Perth, Fremantle, Albany, Roeburna. |
| TASMANIA | Hobart, Launceston, Georgetown. |

1. **New South Wales** occupies part of the east coast of Australia, and includes an area of 323,000 square miles, and has a population estimated at about 750,000. The chief produce of New South Wales is *wool*. The gold-fields of New South Wales yield a much less return than those of the neighbouring colony; but it was in this province, within the valley of the Macquarie river, that gold was first found in Australia, in 1851. The chief towns are :—**SYDNEY** (population 200,000), which stands on the southern shore of Port Jackson—one of the most magnificent of natural harbours; *Newcastle*, at the mouth of the river Hunter; *Bathurst*, on the river Macquarie.

2. **Queensland** comprises the north-eastern portion of Australia, has an area of 670,000 square miles, and a population of about 217,000. The natural productions of Queensland comprise *gold, tin, copper, and coal*, but the colony is chiefly famous for its *sheep and cattle*; and the principal articles of export are *wool and preserved meat*. The capital of the colony and seat of government is **BRISBANE**, on the river *Brisbane*, about 25 miles from its mouth. The other chief towns are *Rockhampton, Maryborough, and Ipswich*.

3. **Victoria** is divided from New South Wales by the river Murray, and has an area of about 88,000 square miles, and a population estimated at 900,000. Sheep-farming, mining, and agriculture are the chief industries. The staple articles of export are *wool and gold*. *Wheat, oats, and barley* are extensively cultivated, and a considerable quantity of *wine*, of good quality, is now produced. The principal towns are Melbourne, Ballarat, and Geelong. **MELBOURNE**, the capital of Victoria, stands near the head of Port Philip, on the small river Yarra. It has grown with surprising rapidity into a flourishing commercial city, with 256,000 inhabitants. *Ballarat* is the leading gold-field town of Victoria. *Geelong* is at the south-western corner of Port Philip.

4. **South Australia** comprises the central portion of the continent, and has an area of 900,000 square miles, and a population (in 1881) of 227,000. South Australia proper only includes the territory south of the 26th parallel. The northern territory, annexed in 1863, extends north of 26° S. lat., between the 129th and 138th meridian. The chief productions are *wool, corn, copper, and wine*. The mineral wealth of the colony consists chiefly of *copper*; but *iron, gold, silver, and bismuth* also exist. The chief towns are:—**ADELAIDE** (population, 35,000), which lies a few miles from the eastern shore of St. Vincent Gulf; *Burra-Burra* (or Kooringa), to the northward of Adelaide; *Port Lincoln*, and *Port Elliot*. In the northern territory the chief settlement is *Palmerston* (or Port Darwin).

5. **West Australia** is the least important of the Australian colonies, and, though established in 1829, has only about 28,000 inhabitants. "The whole of the settled district is usually level, often undulating, but never mountainous. Excepting the spots cleared for cultivation, it may be described as one vast forest." The productions of West Australia comprise *wheat, wine, sandal-wood, jarrah* (or West Australian mahogany). Sheep-farming is at present the chief pursuit of the settlers, and *wool* forms the largest item of export. The chief towns are Perth, Fremantle, and Albany. **PERTH** (population, 6,000), the capital of Western Australia, stands on the banks of the river Swan. *Fremantle*, its port, is at the mouth of that stream.

6. **Tasmania** (or Van Diemen's Land, as it was formerly called) has an area of 24,000 square miles, which is nearly half the size of England, and a population in 1881 of 116,000. The climate of Tasmania is cool and humid, and resembles that of England. The fruit and vegetables of the English orchard and garden flourish in Tasmania. The indigenous plants and animals are the same as those of the neighbouring continent. *Coal* is found in Tasmania. *Iron, copper, lead*, and other metals also occur. Its commercial produce consists principally of *wool*. Excellent *wheat* is grown. **HOBART**, the capital of Tasmania, is on the river Derwent, a few miles above its entrance in Storm Bay. *Launceston* and *Georgetown* are situated on the banks of the Tamar—the latter at its mouth, the former 50 miles inland.

POLYNESIA.

POLYNESIA—a word which signifies “many islands”—embraces the vast multitude of islands that are scattered over the Pacific Ocean. Some of these islands are of large size; but by far the greater number of them are small. The smaller islands, however, are generally arranged in groups.

The principal islands of this division of the globe are—

| | | |
|--------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|
| New Zealand. | Friendly Islands. | New Guinea. |
| Sandwich Islands. | Fiji Islands. | Louisade Archipelago. |
| Caroline Islands. | New Hebrides. | New Britain. |
| Ladrone Islands. | New Caledonia. | New Ireland. |
| Society Islands. | Loyalty Islands. | New Hanover. |
| Marquessa Islands. | Solomon Islands. | Admiralty Islands. |
| Samoa. | Santa Cruz Islands. | |

New Zealand consists of a group of islands situated south of the equator, and within the south temperate zone. It embraces two large islands—North Island and South Island—which are divided by Cook Strait. There is a third island, of much smaller size, called Stewart Island: this is divided from the South Island by Foveaux Strait. The area of New Zealand is about 105,000 square miles, or about twice the size of England and Wales.

Natural Features.—Both the larger islands of New Zealand are mountainous, especially on the western side. *Mount Eymont*, in the North Island, reaches upwards of 8,000 feet; *Mount Cook*, the highest summit of the Southern Alps (South Island), is 13,200 feet. There are extensive plains well suited for pastoral pursuits, as well as fertile tracts of arable land.

Climate.—The climate is temperate and healthy.

Productions.—The trees that are native to New Zealand furnish valuable timber; but, like Australia, this distant region of the south is deficient in indigenous food-plants. New Zealand has neither native grains nor fruits. The *taro* and the *sweet-potato* were cultivated as their chief articles of diet by the natives. The native *flax* furnishes a valuable cordage. Animal life is deficient to an extraordinary degree. The hog was the largest quadruped found in New Zealand by the first settlers. The dog, a few rats and mice, and the hog, make up the sum total of the land animals of this extensive region. There are no marsupials. But the grains, fruits, vegetables, and domestic cattle of Britain thrive in the plains of New Zealand. Sheep are now reared in great numbers, especially in the provinces of Nelson and Canterbury, and wool consti-

tutes an article of export. The colony is also rich in minerals, including *gold, copper, silver, tin, iron, coal, &c.*

Inhabitants.—The native population of New Zealand are a fine race of men, altogether different from the Australian savage. They are now estimated at fewer than 40,000, most of them on the North Island. But their number is diminishing. They have been converted to Christianity since the possession of New Zealand by Britain. New Zealand was colonised by Britain in 1839, and has since formed a possession of the British crown. The colonists are now nearly 490,000 in number.

Divisions and Towns.—The colony is now divided into sixty-three counties, of which thirty-two are in North Island, thirty in South Island, and one in Stewart Island.

The capital of New Zealand is WELLINGTON, situated on the North Island. The other chief towns are *Auckland* and *New Plymouth* (both on the North Island), with *Nelson, Christchurch*, and *Dunedin*, situated upon the South Island. Christchurch is the chief place in the province of Canterbury: Dunedin in that of Otago, which includes valuable gold-fields.

The smaller islands of Polynesia are either of coral or of volcanic formation—the coral islands being by much the more numerous. They consist chiefly of low reefs, raised only a few feet above the level of the sea, and in many cases hardly on a higher level than that reached by the flood-tide. These islands owe their formation to the labours of the coral-worm—a species of zoophyte—which builds up to the level of the ocean the stony matter secreted by its own economy. The coral-worm does not exist at greater depths than twenty or thirty fathoms, so that the numerous coral reefs of the Pacific and other seas are based upon submarine rocks.

1. The greater number of the coral islands are of semicircular shape, with a lagoon of still water enclosed between the inner curve of the semicircle and the reef which connects its extremities. A few of them form complete circles, with enclosed lagoons. The volcanic islands reach in many cases a height of several thousand feet above the sea.

2. The climate of the smaller Polynesian islands is delightful. The heat of the torrid zone is tempered by the influence of the surrounding ocean, and the thermometer undergoes little variation throughout the year. This island-world possesses some productions that are peculiar to itself, chief amongst them the bread-fruit tree, the principal food of the native Polynesian race. The plantain or banana, cocoa-nut, yam, taro, sweet-potato, and arrow-root, are common to this part of the globe

with the islands of the Indian seas. The sugar-cane, vine, orange, and other fruits of warm latitudes, all flourish. None of the larger animals are found, excepting the domestic cattle introduced by Europeans.

The **Sandwich Islands**, in the Northern Pacific, and the **Society Islands**, in the southern half of that ocean, are the most important of the smaller Polynesian groups. The Sandwich Islands are subject in great measure to the controlling influence of the United States. The largest island of this group is Owhyhee (or Hawaii), upon which Captain Cook, their discoverer, was killed, in 1779. The largest of the Society Islands is Otaheite, or Tahiti, which is under the control of France.

The **Fiji Islands** are now an integral portion of the British Empire, the sovereignty over them having been accepted by Britain in 1874. They are of growing importance in connection with the commerce of the Australian colonies and the Pacific. The port of *Levuka* (on the island of Ovalau, to the eastward of Great Fiji, one of the two large islands of the group) is the capital.

New Caledonia, a large island measuring 200 miles in length, has been since 1854 in the possession of France.

Both the **New Hebrides** and the **Solomon Islands** are extensive but little known groups. The Island of Vanikoro (or Manicolo), the largest of the Santa Cruz group, was the scene of La Perouse's shipwreck, in 1788.

New Guinea, or Papua, is of very large size. Its shores are in many parts lined by high mountains, but the interior is almost entirely unknown. The Dutch visit its western coasts, as also do the Chinese and the Malays, who obtain thence tortoise-shell, edible birds'-nests, tripong, and other articles. The beautiful birds-of-paradise are native to this region. Various parts of the island have been recently explored by Australian colonists, "prospecting" for gold, but no payable gold-fields have as yet been discovered.

GEOGRAPHY.

Class-Book of Modern Geography,

With Examination Questions, by William Hughes, F.R.G.S. The Examination Questions are drawn from the result of much experience in tuition on the part of the Author, and will be found to add considerably to the value of the work as a class-book for popular school use. *New edition, revised and greatly enlarged.* Crown 8vo, cloth, 3s. 6d.

*. * "Phillips' Comprehensive School Atlas" is designed to accompany this work.

Elementary Class-Book of Modern Geography,

By William Hughes, F.R.G.S. This volume is abridged from the larger class-book, and is designed for the use of less advanced pupils. *New edition, revised and greatly enlarged.* Foolsap 8vo, 1s. 6d.

*. * "Phillips' Atlas for Beginners" is designed to accompany this work.

Hughes's Elementary Geography of England and Wales.

With Colored Map. New and improved edition. Imperial 32mo, neat cover, 2d. Bound in cloth, 3d.

Hughes's Elementary Geography of Scotland and Ireland,

With Maps. New and improved edition. Imperial 32mo, neat cover, 2d. Bound in cloth, 3d.

Hughes's Elementary Geography of Europe.

With Colored Map. New and improved edition. Imperial 32mo, neat cover, 2d. Bound in cloth, 3d.

Lawson's Outlines of Geography,

For Schools and Colleges. By W. Lawson, St. Mark's College, Chelsea. New edition, entirely re-written and extended. Foolsap 8vo, cloth, 3s. 6d.

This book may also be had in Parts, viz :—

Part I.—The British Islands, 6d.

Part III.—Europe, 9d.

Part II.—The British Colonies, 6d.

Part IV.—Asia, Africa, America, 1s.

Lawson's Young Scholar's Geography.

A simple Book for Young Learners. Foolsap 8vo, stiff cover, 6d. Bound in cloth, 9d.

*. * This work is intended as a companion to "Phillips' Initiatory Atlas."

Faunthorpe's Geography of the British Colonies and Foreign Possessions.

For the use of Students in Training Colleges, Pupil Teachers, Middle Class Schools, and for Candidates preparing for the Civil Service, Army and Navy, &c. By the Rev. John P. Faunthorpe, M.A., F.R.G.S. Principal of Whitelands Training College. *Fourth edition, revised and enlarged.* Crown 8vo, cloth, 2s. 6d.

* * Phillips' "Atlas of the British Empire throughout the World" is designed to accompany this work.

British Colonies and Dependencies.

Compiled chiefly from the latest Official List. 8vo, printed on card, 1d.

Phillips' Series of Geographies of the Counties of England and Wales,

For use in Schools, and adapted to the requirements of the New Code. Uniformly printed in bold and readable type. Foolscap 8vo, 32 pp with Map, sewed, each 2d. Bound in cloth, with Colored Map, 4 Double vols., 64 pp., with Maps, sewed, 4d. Bound in cloth, with Colored Map, 6d.

LIST OF THE SERIES.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>BEDFORDSHIRE, with Sketch Maps, by Rev. J. P. Faunthorpe, M.A., F.R.G.S. BERKSHIRE, with Sketch Maps, by Rev. J. P. Faunthorpe, M.A., F.R.G.S. CAMBRIDGE and HUNTINGDON, with Sketch Maps, by Rev. J. P. Faunthorpe, M.A., F.R.G.S. CHESHIRE, by J. H. Sortwell. CORNWALL, with Sketch Maps, by Rev. J. P. Faunthorpe, M.A., F.R.G.S. CUMBERLAND and WESTMORELAND, by J. Walton. DERBYSHIRE, with Sketch Maps, by Rev. J. P. Faunthorpe, M.A., F.R.G.S. DEVONSHIRE, with Sketch Maps, by Rev. J. P. Faunthorpe, M.A., F.R.G.S. DORSET, with Sketch Maps, by Rev. J. P. Faunthorpe, M.A., F.R.G.S. DURHAM, by W. Lawson, F.R.G.S. ESSEX, by W. Hughes, F.R.G.S. GLOUCESTER, by J. Walton. HAMPSHIRE, with Sketch Maps, by Rev. J. P. Faunthorpe, M.A., F.R.G.S. HEREFORDSHIRE, by Rev. D. Morris, B.A. HERTFORDSHIRE, with Sketch Maps, by Rev. J. P. Faunthorpe, M.A., F.R.G.S. KENT, by W. Hughes, F.R.G.S. LANCASHIRE, by W. Hughes, F.R.G.S. LEICESTER and RUTLAND, by J. Walton. LINCOLNSHIRE, with Sketch Maps, by Rev. J. P. Faunthorpe, M.A., F.R.G.S. MIDDLESEX, by W. Hughes, F.R.G.S. MONMOUTHSHIRE, by Rev. D. Morris, B.A.</p> | <p>NORFOLK, by Rev. D. Morris, B.A. NORTHAMPTONSHIRE, by Rev. D. Morris, B.A. NORTHUMBERLAND, by J. Walton. NOTTINGHAMSHIRE, with Sketch Maps, by Rev. J. P. Faunthorpe, M.A., F.R.G.S. OXFORD and BUCKS, with Sketch Maps, by Rev. J. P. Faunthorpe, M.A., F.R.G.S. SHROPSHIRE, by Rev. D. Morris, B.A. SOMERSET, by W. Hughes, F.R.G.S. STAFFORDSHIRE, by Rev. D. Morris, B.A. SUFFOLK, by Rev. D. Morris, B.A. SURREY, by W. Hughes, F.R.G.S. SUSSEX, with Sketch Maps, by Rev. J. P. Faunthorpe, M.A., F.R.G.S. WARWICKSHIRE, by Rev. D. Morris, B.A. WILTSHIRE, with Sketch Maps, by Rev. J. P. Faunthorpe, M.A., F.R.G.S. WORCESTERSHIRE, by Rev. D. Morris, B.A. YORKSHIRE, NORTH AND EAST RIDING, with Sketch Maps, by Rev. J. P. Faunthorpe, M.A., F.R.G.S.</p> |
|---|--|

DOUBLE VOLUMES.

- YORKSHIRE, WEST RIDING, with Sketch Maps, by Rev. J. P. Faunthorpe, M.A., F.R.G.S.
NORTH WALES, by W. Garratt Jones
SOUTH WALES, by Rev. Thomas Newton, B.A.

PHILIPS' EDUCATIONAL CATALOGUE.

ATLASES.

The Training College Atlas.

A SERIES OF TWENTY-FOUR MAPS, ILLUSTRATING THE

PHYSICAL AND POLITICAL GEOGRAPHY

Of the Chief Countries of the World. Originally Designed and Drawn by W. Hughes, F.R.G.S. *New and enlarged edition*, extended and completed by E. G. Ravenstein, F.R.G.S. Medium folio, cloth lettered, 18s.

. The "Training College Atlas" is a work altogether distinct in character from any previously published. In its production the Publishers have aimed at combining the *fullest and most recent physical and political information* with the *greatest possible clearness and distinctness*, and it is believed that the new Atlas will be found to possess both these important features in a higher degree than any yet issued.

"It would be difficult, if not impossible, to supersede this really handsome and serviceable Atlas, which we think the best of the many successful efforts which Messrs. Philip and Son have yet put forth as geographical publishers."..... —*The School and University Magazine*.

"Amongst the many excellent Atlases which are now available for use, we are disposed to give a high place to the 'Training College Atlas.' All the recent political changes in different parts of the world are carefully represented."—*School Guardian*.

..... "The fullest information is given, consistently with remarkable distinctness and even beauty of execution, and with no more trouble to the Student than that of mere inspection."..... —*The Bookseller*.

Philips' Comprehensive School Atlas

Of Ancient and Modern Geography, with Index. Edited by W. Hughes, F.R.G.S. New and improved edition. Imperial 8vo, strongly half-bound, 10s. 6d.

Philips' Student's Atlas,

Comprising Thirty-eight authentic Maps of the Principal Countries of the World, with Index. Edited by William Hughes, F.R.G.S. Imperial 8vo, strongly bound in cloth, 7s. 6d.

Philips' Select School Atlas,

Comprising Twenty-four authentic Maps of the Principal Countries of the World, with Index. Edited by William Hughes, F.R.G.S. Imperial 8vo, new and cheaper edition, strongly bound in cloth, 6s.

Philips' Introductory School Atlas,

Comprising Eighteen Maps of the Principal Countries of the World with Index. Edited by William Hughes, F.R.G.S. New and cheaper edition. Imperial 8vo, cloth, 3s. 6d.

Philips' Young Student's Atlas,

Comprising Thirty-six Maps of the Principal Countries of the World Edited by W. Hughes, F.R.G.S. Imperial 4to, cloth, 3s. 6d.

Philips' Young Scholar's Atlas,

New and enlarged edition, containing Twenty-four Maps. Edited by W. Hughes, F.R.G.S. Imperial 4to, 2s. 6d.

Philips' Atlas for Beginners,

Comprising Thirty-two Maps of the Principal Countries of the World, with Index. New and improved edition. Edited by W. Hughes, F.R.G.S. Crown 4to, cloth, 2s. 6d.

Philips' Handy Atlas of General Geography,

Containing Thirty-two Maps, with a Consulting Index. Edited by William Hughes, F.R.G.S. Crown 8vo, cloth, 2s. 6d.

Philips' Shilling Atlas of Modern Geography,

Containing Twelve Imperial Quarto Maps. 1s.

Philips' First School Atlas.

New and enlarged edition, containing Twenty-four Maps. Crown 4to, 1s.

Philips' Preparatory Atlas,

Containing Sixteen Maps, full colored. Crown 4to, in neat cover, 6d.

Philips' Elementary Atlas for Young Learners.

Sixteen Maps. Small 4to, in neat cover, 6d.

Philips' "Standard" Atlas.

Prepared to suit the Higher Standards (New Code). Foolscap 4to, 6d.

Philips' Initiatory Atlas for Young Learners.

Containing Twelve Maps. Imp. 16mo, 3d. Colored, 6d. Ditto, cloth, 1s.

Philips' Atlas of the British Colonies,

Containing Sixteen Maps, including a Map of the British Empire throughout the World, colored so as to shew the whole of the British Possessions at one view. Crown 4to, in neat cover, 6d.

Philips' Atlas of the Countries of Europe,

Including a Map of the World and a General Map of Europe. Crown 4to, 6d.

Philips' Atlas of Wales,

Comprising Twelve Maps of the Separate Counties. Crown 4to, 6d.

Philips' Atlas of the British Empire throughout the World,

A Series of Twenty-three Maps, with explanatory and statistical Notes, by John Bartholomew, F.R.G.S. Imp. 8vo, bound in cloth, 3s, 6d.

Philips' School Atlas of Australia,

Comprising Maps of the separate Colonies, including a General Map of Australia, and Maps of New Zealand and Tasmania. Crown 4to, cloth, 2s.

Philips' School Atlas of New Zealand,

Comprising Eleven Maps. Crown 4to, bound in cloth, 2s.

Philips' Physical Atlas for Beginners,

Comprising Twelve Maps. New and cheaper edition. Crown 4to, stiff cover, 1s. Cloth lettered, 1s. 6d.

. This Atlas is intended to accompany "Philips' Elementary Class-Book of Physical Geography."

Philips' School Atlas of Physical Geography,

Comprising a Series of Maps and Diagrams illustrating the Natural Features, Climates, Various Productions, and Chief Natural Phenomena of the Globe. Edited by W. Hughes, F.R.G.S. Imperial 8vo, strongly bound in cloth, 10s. 6d.

. This Atlas is intended as a companion volume to Hughes's "Class-Book of Physical Geography."

Philips' School Atlas of Classical Geography,

A Series of Eighteen Maps, with Index. Medium 4to, cloth, 5s.

Philips' Handy Classical Atlas,

A Series of Eighteen Maps. Medium 8vo, cloth lettered, 2s. 6d.

Philips' School Atlas of Scripture Geography,

A Series of Twelve Maps. New and cheaper edition. Crown 4to, in stiff cover, 1s. Cloth lettered, 1s. 6d. With a valuable Consulting Index, and strongly bound in cloth, 2s. 6d.

Philips' Smaller Scripture Atlas,

Containing Twelve Maps. Imperial 16mo, illustrated cover, 6d. Cloth lettered, 1s.

EDUCATIONAL MAPS.

Philips' Series of Large School-room Maps,

With the Physical Features boldly and distinctly delineated, and the Political Boundaries carefully colored. Size—5 feet 8 inches by 4 feet 6 inches. Constructed by William Hughes, F.R.G.S. Mounted on rollers and varnished, 16s.

LIST OF THE MAPS.

Price Sixteen Shillings each.

The World in Hemispheres.
Europe.
Asia.
Africa.
North America.
South America.
Australia and New Zealand.

New South Wales.
England and Wales.
Scotland.
Ireland.
Palestine.
India.

Price Twenty-one Shillings each.

The World, on Mercator's Projection.

The British Islands.
New Zealand.
Oceania.

Supplementary Maps to the Series.

School Wall Map of the World, on Gall's Cylindrical Projection. Drawn and engraved by J. Bartholomew, F.R.G.S. Size—4 ft. 6 in. by 4 ft. 7 in. Mounted on rollers and varnished, £1 5s.

Philips' Industrial Map of England and Wales, with part of Scotland; showing the Lines of Railway, the Seats of the Principal Manufactures, and the Districts of Mines and Minerals; distinguishing Canals and Navigable Rivers, tracing the Tracks of Foreign and Coasting Steam Vessels, marking the Position of Lighthouses, &c. Constructed from the most authentic sources, and revised by William Hughes, F.R.G.S. Size—6 ft. by 4 ft. 9 in. Mounted on rollers and varnished, £1 5s.

Philips' Smaller Series of School-room Maps.

Size—3 ft. by 2 ft. 6 in. Mounted on rollers and varnished, each 7s. 6d.

LIST OF THE MAPS.

Eastern Hemisphere
Western Hemisphere
Europe
Asia
Africa

North America
South America
Australia
New Zealand
England and Wales

Scotland
Ireland
Palestine
Wanderings of the Israelites

The above are reductions of the large series, constructed by William Hughes, F.R.G.S., and are designed for use in Private Schools and Families. They are clearly and distinctly engraved, and embody an amount of information not to be had in any similar series of Maps.

PHILIPS' SCHOOL-ROOM MAPS OF THE COUNTIES OF ENGLAND.

Prepared expressly for use in Public Elementary Schools, to meet the requirements of Standard III. of the New Code. Reduced from the Ordnance Survey.

Constructed by John Bartholomew, F.R.G.S.

MAPS ALREADY ISSUED.

Lancashire and Cheshire. Size—5 feet 8 inches by 4 feet 6 inches.
Scale—1½ mile to 1 inch. Mounted on rollers and varnished, 16s.

Lancashire. Size—37 inches by 54 inches. Scale—1½ mile to 1 inch.
Mounted on rollers and varnished, 10s. 6d.

Yorkshire. Size—37 inches by 54 inches. Scale—3 miles to 1 inch.
Mounted on rollers and varnished, 7s. 6d.

Cheshire. Size—33 inches by 44 inches. Scale—1½ mile to 1 inch.
Mounted on rollers and varnished, 7s. 6d.

Staffordshire. Size—35½ inches by 54 inches. Scale—2½ miles to 1
inch. Mounted on rollers and varnished, 12s.

Lincolnshire. Size—35½ inches by 54 inches. Scale—1½ mile to 1
inch. Mounted on rollers and varnished, 12s.

Northumberland. Size—30 inches by 42 inches. Scale—2 miles to
1 inch. Mounted on rollers and varnished, 7s. 6d.

Nottinghamshire. Size—30 inches by 42 inches. Scale—1½ mile
to 1 inch. Mounted on rollers and varnished, 7s. 6d.

Durham. Size—30 inches by 42 inches. Scale—1½ mile to 1 inch
Mounted on rollers and varnished, 7s. 6d.

Warwickshire. Size—30 inches by 42 inches. Scale—1½ mile to 1
inch. Mounted on rollers and varnished, 7s. 6d.

Derbyshire. Size—30 inches by 42 inches. Scale—1½ mile to 1 inch.
Mounted on rollers and varnished, 7s. 6d.

Kent. Size—30 inches by 42 inches. Scale—2 miles to 1 in. Mounted
on rollers and varnished, 7s. 6d.

Middlesex. Size—5 feet 8 inches by 4 feet 6 inches. Scale—2 inches
to 1 mile. Mounted on rollers and varnished, £1 1s.

. Other Counties in preparation.

DIAGRAMS, &c.

Tablet Lessons,

For the use of the School-room or Nursery. The Set, comprising 19 royal broadside sheets, in cover, with millboard back and wooden ledge to hang up, 3s. 6d. The separate sheets, each 2d.

Philips' School-Room Wall Sheets of Multiplication Tables, Numbers, Pence, and Shillings.

Intended for use in National and Board Schools. Size—5 feet 4 inches by 4 feet 6 inches. Mounted on rollers and varnished, each 15s. No. 1, from One to Twelve times. | No. 2, from Thirteen to Twenty times.

Philips' Diagrams of the Synoptical Tables of the Metric System of Weights and Measures,

With their English Equivalents. Size—44 inches by 33 inches. Mounted on rollers and varnished, each 7s. 6d.

A Hand-Book of the Metric System.

Companion to the above. By W. Rickard, LL.D. 6d.

Philips' Diagram of Geographical Terms,

Pictorially illustrating the terms used in Geography. Size—36 in. by 27 in. Mounted on rollers and varnished, 5s.

Philips' Music Sheets,

For use in connection with Taylor's "Manual of Vocal Music," and for general purposes of Musical Instruction. Printed in two colors. Size—33 inches by 44 inches. The set of 15 sheets complete, £1 10s.; or mounted on cloth, with wooden ledge at top, £2 12s. 6d. Separate sheets, unmounted, 2s. 6d. Ditto, mounted on cloth, 4s. Ditto, mounted on rollers and varnished, 5s.

These Sheets, which are unique of their kind, proceed in order from the earliest rudiments, and afford material for the full explanation of any musical passage.

SCRIPTURE PRINTS FOR SCHOOLS AND FAMILIES.

The set comprises 36 Prints, beautifully printed in Oil Colors, with Texts in Ornamental Borders. Size—17 inches by 13 inches. In Neat cover, 15s. The separate Prints, each 6d.

Complete List on application.

PHILIPS'

ELEMENTARY AND ADVANCED

SERIES OF CLASS BOOKS.

READING.

PHILIPS' SERIES OF READING BOOKS,

FOR USE IN

PUBLIC ELEMENTARY SCHOOLS.

Edited by JOHN G. CROMWELL, M.A.,

Principal of St. Mark's College, Chelsea.

Specially adapted to meet the requirements of the New Code.

| | | | |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---|---|
| PRIMER | 80 pp., strongly bound in cloth... | 0 | 6 |
| FIRST BOOK—Part I | 96 pp., strongly bound in cloth... | 0 | 6 |
| FIRST BOOK—Part II | 96 pp., strongly bound in cloth... | 0 | 6 |
| SECOND BOOK | 160 pp., strongly bound in cloth... | 0 | 9 |
| THIRD BOOK | 208 pp., strongly bound in cloth... | 1 | 0 |
| FOURTH BOOK | 288 pp., strongly bound in cloth... | 1 | 4 |
| FIFTH BOOK | 320 pp., strongly bound in cloth... | 1 | 9 |
| SIXTH BOOK | 352 pp., strongly bound in cloth... | 2 | 0 |
| POETICAL READING BOOK | 352 pp., strongly bound in cloth... | 2 | 6 |
| FIRST POETICAL BOOK | 160 pp., strongly bound in cloth... | 1 | 0 |

The Present entirely New Series of Reading Books has been prepared with much care and labour under the personal supervision of the Editor; and it is believed everything has been done which experience in teaching could suggest to adapt them to the educational requirements of the present time.

The special aim of the Publishers has been to produce thoroughly good and durable books; they direct the attention of Teachers and School Managers to the *strength of the sewing and firmness of the binding*, both important features, which cannot fail to recommend them for use in Elementary Schools.

WRITING.

PHILIPS' SERIES OF HEAD LINE COPY BOOKS.

Phillips' Caxton Copy Books.

Written and arranged by a Practical Teacher to meet the requirements of the New Code. In Twenty Books. Foolscap oblong 4to. Nos. 1 to 18, each 2d. Books 19 and 20, each 3d.

LIST OF THE SERIES.

STANDARD I.

- 1 ELEMENTS
Letters and Short Words
- 2 ELEMENTS
Long Letters and Easy Words
- 3 ELEMENTS
Long Letters and Easy Words

STANDARD II.

- 4 LARGE AND MEDIUM TEXT
Short Words and Figures
- 5 LARGE AND SMALL TEXT
Capitals and Proper Names
- 6 MEDIUM AND SMALL TEXT
Capitals and Figures

STANDARD III.

- 7 DOUBLE SMALL HAND AND SMALL TEXT
Easy Words and Sentences
- 8 DOUBLE SMALL HAND
Capitals, Figures and Sums
- 9 DOUBLE SMALL HAND
Capitals, Figures and Sums

STANDARD IV.

- 10 DOUBLE SMALL HAND AND TEXT
Geography of British Isles
- 11 SMALL HAND AND SMALL TEXT
Poetical Quotations, Figures & Sums
- 12 DOUBLE SMALL HAND
Poetical Quotations

STANDARD V.

- 13 SMALL HAND, LARGE AND SMALL TEXT
Geography of Europe and Figures
- 14 DOUBLE SMALL HAND
History of England
- 15 SMALL HAND
Geography of Asia

STANDARD VI.

- 16 SMALL HAND
Geography of America, Africa, and Australia
- 17 SMALL HAND
Biography and Poetry
- 18 SMALL HAND
Poetry

SUPPLEMENTARY BOOKS.

- 19 COMMERCIAL LETTERS, BILLS, RECEIPTS, &c.
- 20 COMMERCIAL ORDERS, INVOICES, DAY BOOK, LEDGER, &c.

Phillips' Home and Colonial Copy Books.

Written and arranged by Alexander Stewart. In Fifteen Books. Foolscap 4to, each 2d.

LIST OF THE SERIES.

- | | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1 Initial Exercises | 7 Round Hand | 12 Introduction to Ladies' Hand |
| 2 Letters & Combinations | 8 Introduction to Small Hand | 13 Ladies' Hand |
| 3 Short Words | 9 Round and Small Hand | 14 Commercial Sentences |
| 4 Capitals | 10 Small Hand | 15 Figures |
| 5 Text Hand | 11 Text, Round, and Small Hand. | |
| 6 Text and Round | | |

NEW NUMBERS SPECIALLY PREPARED.

- No. 6½. For Standard 2.—Text and Half-Text with Capitals.
- No. 9½. For Standard 3.—Small Hand, Capitals and Figures.
- No. 10½. For Standard 4.—Advanced Small Hand.

32, FLEET STREET, LONDON; AND LIVERPOOL. 9

Philips' Progressive Series of School Copy Books,

Written and arranged by Alex. Stewart. F'cap 4to, Printed on Fine Cream Paper, each 2d. Fine edition, on Superfine Paper, each 3d.

LIST OF THE SERIES.

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| 1 Initiatory Exercises | 8 Round and Small Hand |
| 2 Alphabet in Progressive Order | 9 Small Hand |
| 3 Short Words | 10 Large, Round, and Small Hand |
| 4 Large Hand | 10½ Large, Text, Round, & Small Hand |
| 4½ Text Hand | 11 Ladies' Small Hand |
| 5 Large and Round Hand | 12 Commercial Small Hand |
| 6 Round Hand | 13 Figures |
| 7 Introduction to Small Hand | 14 Introductory Book for Girls |
| 7½ Introductory Book—Large, Round, and Small Hand | 15 Ladies' Angular Hand—First Book |

Philips' Progressive Series of School Copy Books.

Written by Alexander Stewart. Post 4to, Printed on Fine Cream Wove Paper, each 4d. Demy 4to, Extra Superfine Series, each 6d. Large Post 4to Series, each 6d.

LIST OF THE SERIES.

- | | | |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1 Initiatory Exercises | 7 Introduction to Small Hand | 11 Ladies' Small Hand |
| 2 Alphabet in Progressive Order | 8 Round & Small Hand | 12 Set of Commercial Sentences |
| 3 Short Words | 9 Small Hand | 13 Text Hand |
| 4 Large Hand | 10 Large, Round, and Small Hand | 14 Large, Text, Round and Small Hand |
| 5 Large and Round Hand | | |
| 6 Round Hand | | |

Philips' Victoria Copy Books.

With Engraved Head-lines, written and arranged by Alexander Stewart. An entirely New Series, in Twelve Books, oblong 4to, printed on Superfine extra thick Cream Wove Paper, each 3d.

LIST OF THE SERIES.

- | | | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1 Initiatory Exercises | 6 Round Hand | 10 Text, Round, and Small Hand |
| 2 Alphabet in Progressive Order | 7 Introduction to Small Hand | 11 Introduction to Ladies' Hand |
| 3 Short Words | 8 Round and Small Hand | 12 Ladies' Small Hand |
| 4 Text Hand | 9 Small Hand | |
| 5 Text and Round Hand | | |

Philips' Series of Historical Copy Books.

In Twelve Books, Demy 4to, extra thick paper, each 6d.

LIST OF THE SERIES.

- | | | |
|---|---|--|
| 1 William the Conqueror, to Henry the First | 5 Henry the Fourth, to Henry the Sixth | 9 Charles the First, to Charles the Second |
| 2 Stephen, to Richard the First | 6 Edward the Fourth, to Richard the Third | 10 James the Second, to Anne |
| 3 John, to Edward the First | 7 Henry the Seventh, to Edward the Sixth | 11 George the First, to George the Third |
| 4 Edward the Second, to Richard the Second | 8 Mary, to James the First | 12 George the Fourth, to Victoria |

Phillips' Series of Copy Slips,

Arranged and written by Alexander Stewart. Printed on Fine Cream Wove Paper, each 4d.

LIST OF THE SERIES.

1 Short Words
2 Large Hand
3 Round Hand

4 Introduction to Small Hand
5 Small Hand

6 Ladies' Small Hand
7 Text Hand

ARITHMETIC.

Piper's Advanced Arithmetic for Schools & Colleges, 3s. 6d.

"The reason and illustrations of the various rules are very fully given . . . a special and most valuable feature."—*Scholastic World*.

Piper's Elementary Treatise on Arithmetic, 1s. 6d.

"The author's endeavour to make the study of arithmetic what it ought to be—a thorough mental training—is apparent on every page."—*Teacher's Assistant*.

Piper's Mental Arithmetic, 2s.

Piper's Introductory Mental Arithmetic, 6d.

"Mr. Piper's 'Mental Arithmetic' . . . has had a deserved success. . . . Excellent instructions."—*School Guardian*.

GEOGRAPHY.

Class Book of Modern Geography,

By William Hughes, F.R.G.S. Foolscap 8vo, cloth, 3s. 6d.

. "Phillips' Comprehensive School Atlas" is designed to accompany this work.

Elementary Class Book of Modern Geography,

By William Hughes, F.R.G.S. Foolscap 8vo, 1s. 6d.

. "Phillips' Atlas for Beginners" is designed to accompany this work.

Hughes' Elementary Geography of England and Wales,

With Colored Map. *New edition*. Neat cover, 2d. Cloth, 3d.

Hughes' Elementary Geography of Scotland and Ireland,

With Maps. *New edition*. Neat cover, 2d. Cloth, 3d.

Hughes' Elementary Geography of Europe,

With Colored Map. *New edition*. Neat cover, 2d. Cloth, 3d.

Lawson's Outlines of Geography,

New edition, entirely re-written and extended. Cloth, 3s. 6d.

This book may also be had in Parts, viz :—

Part I.—The British Islands, 6d. | Part III.—Europe, 9d.
Part II.—The British Colonies, 6d. | Part IV.—Asia, Africa, America, 1s.

Lawson's Young Scholar's Geography.

Foolscap 8vo, stiff cover, 6d. Cloth, 9d.

. This work is intended as a companion to "Philips' Initiatory Atlas."

***Faunthorpe's Geography of the British Colonies
and Foreign Possessions.***

New edition, revised. Foolscap 8vo cloth, 2s.

. Philips' "Atlas of the British Empire throughout the World" is designed to accompany this work.

British Colonies and Dependencies.

Compiled chiefly from the latest Official List. 8vo, printed on card, 1d.

***Philips' Series of Geographies of the Counties of
England and Wales,***

For use in Schools, and adapted to the requirements of the New Code.
F'cap 8vo, 32 pp., with Map, sewed, each 2d. Bound in cloth, with
Colored Map, 4d. D'ble vols., 64 pp., with Maps, sewed, 4d. Bound
in cloth, with Colored Map, 6d. List of the Series on application.

Crawley's Manual of British Historical Geography,

Foolscap 8vo, cloth, 2s.

***Philips' Geography and History of the Counties of
England and Wales.***

A companion volume to Philips' "Handy County Atlas." Foolscap
8vo, cloth extra, 5s.

Bowden's Geographical Outlines of New Zealand.

With two Maps, and Examination Questions. Cloth, 1s.

Bowden's Manual of New Zealand Geography,

With Maps and Examination Questions. Foolscap 8vo, cloth, 3s. 6d.

PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY.

Hughes' Class-Book of Physical Geography.

With numerous Diagrams and Examination Questions. *New edition*, entirely re-written and extended, with a Map of the World. F^{cap} 8vo, cloth, 3s. 6d.

*. * "Philip's School Atlas of Physical Geography" is designed to accompany this work.

Hughes' Elementary Class-Book of Physical Geography.

With Diagrams. Intended as a Companion Text-Book to "Philip's Physical Atlas for Beginners." Foolscap 8vo, cloth, 1s.

Lawson's Geography of River Systems. Cloth, 1s.

Lawson's Geography of Coast Lines. Cloth, 1s.

Maury's Physical Geography of the Sea.

New edition, with Addenda and numerous Illustrative Charts and Woodcuts. Crown 8vo, cloth, 5s.

HISTORY.

DAVIES' HISTORICAL MANUALS.

"Evidently the result of laborious research and extensive scholarship."—*The Head-master, Archbishop Tenison's School, London.*

Manuals of the History of England.

1. FROM THE DEATH OF EDWARD THE CONFESSOR TO THE DEATH OF KING JOHN (1066-1216). 2s.
2. FROM THE ACCESSION OF HENRY III. TO THE DEATH OF RICHARD III. (1216-1485). 2s.
3. THE TUDOR PERIOD (1485-1603). 2s.
4. THE STUART PERIOD (1603-1689). 1s. 6d.
5. FROM THE REIGN OF CHARLES I. TO THE END OF THE COMMON-WEALTH (1640-1660). 1s. 6d.
6. FROM THE RESTORATION OF CHARLES II. TO THE REVOLUTION (1660-1688). 2s.
7. FROM THE ACCESSION OF JAMES I. TO THE BATTLE OF THE BOYNE (1603-1690). 2s.
8. FROM THE REVOLUTION OF 1688 TO THE DEATH OF QUEEN ANNE, 1714. 1s. 6d.
9. FROM THE ACCESSION OF WILLIAM III. TO THE ACCESSION OF GEORGE III. (1689-1760). 2s. 6d.
10. (a) FROM THE ACCESSION OF GEORGE III. TO THE BATTLE OF WATERLOO (1760-1815). 2s. 6d.

(b) *MANUAL OF ENGLISH LITERATURE FROM 1710-1815.* 2s.

NOTE.—Nos. 8 and 4 also embrace the Literature of the Tudor and Stuart Periods respectively.

Brewer's Outlines of English History. 6d.

Crawley's Manual of British Historical Geography. 2s.

Curnow's English History for Schools and Colleges. 8s. 6d.

"Mr. Curnow's history shows accurate thought and learning."—*Christchurch Times*.

"A model English History."—*Literary World*.

"A very admirable review of English History."—*Lyttleton Times*.

GRAMMAR & SPELLING.

*Brewer's Manual of English Grammar and Analysis
of Sentences.* 1s.

Brewer's Elementary English Grammar and Analysis. 4d.

Martin's Scholar's Handbook of English Etymology,

Prepared for the use of the Upper Standards of our Elementary Schools.
Foolscap 8vo, stiff cover, 3d.

Jones's Spelling Book for Beginners. 6d.

Jones's Essentials of Spelling. 1s.

SCRIPTURE.

Bible Reading Lessons,

For Secular and other Schools. Edited by Thomas B. Bowden, B.A.
Foolscap 8vo, strongly bound in cloth, viz:—

First Series, containing Selections from Genesis, History of the Jewish Nation from Egypt to the Settlement in the Land of Canaan, 1s.

Second Series, containing the History of the Jewish Nation from the Settlement in the Land of Canaan to the Return from Captivity in Babylon, 1s.

Third Series, containing Selections from the Psalms of David, Proverbs of Solomon, the Four Gospels, and the Acts of the Apostles, 1s.

Phillips' Series of Scripture Manuals

With full Explanatory Notes and Appendices.

"Very carefully done, and contains a large amount of information."—*School Guardian*.

"These Manuals have our heartiest commendation."—*Schoolmaster*.

"The notes are very full, and the matter is so arranged as to render great assistance to the student."—*Scholastic World*.

By the Rev. H. LINTON, M.A.

| | | | |
|----------------------|-----------|----------------------|----------|
| The Book of Nehemiah | 1 6 | The Book of Jeremiah | 2 0 |
| The Book of Genesis | 2 0 | | |

By the late JAMES DAVIES.

| | | | |
|-------------------------------------|-----------|-----------------------------------|-----------|
| Notes on Genesis | 1 0 | Notes on St. Matthew's Gospel | 2 0 |
| Notes on Exodus | 1 0 | Notes on St. Mark's Gospel | 1 0 |
| Notes on Joshua | 1 0 | Notes on St. Luke's Gospel | 1 6 |
| Notes on Judges | 1 0 | Notes on St. John's Gospel | 2 6 |
| Notes on I. Samuel | 1 0 | Notes on the Acts of the Apostles | 1 6 |
| Notes on II. Samuel | 1 6 | Manual of the Church Catechism | 1 0 |
| Notes on I. Kings | 1 6 | | |
| Notes on II. Kings | 1 6 | | |
| Notes on Ezra | 1 0 | | |
| Manual of the Book of Common Prayer | 2 0 | | |

MATHEMATICS.**Bain's First Grade Practical Geometry,**

Containing—(a) all the necessary problems fully worked out, (b) test exercises on the same, (c) a series of graduated exercises for copying, and (d) all the First Grade Examination Papers given by the Department during the last three years. Price 3d.

"Well got up, the diagrams are clear."—*Schoolmaster*.

"Diagrams very clearly drawn."—*Scholastic World*.

"Instructions clear and precise."—*School Guardian*.

Martin's Elements of Euclid,

Containing the First Six Books, with a Selection of Geometrical Problems for Solution, to which are added the Parts of the Eleventh and Twelfth Books. Crown 8vo, cloth, 8s. 6d.

Martin's Euclid,

With a Selection of Geometrical Problems for Solution. Crown 8vo, Book I, cloth, 1s.; Books I. and II. 1s. 6d.

Martin's *Graduated Course of Problems on Practical Plane and Solid Geometry,*

With Miscellaneous Exercises in Practical Plane and Solid Geometry,
Etymology of Geometrical Terms, &c. Crown 8vo, cloth, 8s. 6d.

Whitworth's "Standard" Algebra,

Foolscap 8vo, stiff cover, 6d. Cloth, 9d.

SCIENCE.

Piper's *Acoustics, Light, and Heat,*

With numerous Illustrations, price 2s. 6d.

"By far the best and clearest elementary treatise on the subject."—*The Principal, Training College, York.*

"Very suitable for the use of science classes."—*The Principal, Training College, Ripon.*

Class Book of Inorganic Chemistry. In preparation.

Hutton's *Class Book of Elementary Geology,* 1s. 6d.

Hewitt's *Class Book of Elementary Mechanics.*

Part I.—Matter. With Illustrations, price 1s. 6d.

DRAWING.

Philips' *Series of Drawing Books.*

Simple Studies in Straight Line and Perspective, in Seven Books, each 3d.; the Set, bound in cloth, 2s. 6d.

Easy Landscapes. First Series, in Six Books, each 3d.; the Set, bound in cloth, 2s. 6d.

Easy Landscapes. Second Series, in Six Books, each 3d.; the Set, bound in cloth, 2s. 6d. *Blank Books for use with above, each 3d.*

Philips' Landscape Drawing Studies, from Original Sketches. 4s.

Architectural Drawing Studies.

Intended as a Simple Guide to the knowledge of Ancient Styles of Architecture; by Alfred Rimmer. With an Introduction by the Rev. J. S. Howson, D.D., Dean of Chester. Imperial 4to, boards, 2s. 6d.; cloth elegant, gilt edges, 5s.

Easy Course of Perspective.

Preparatory to Free-Hand Drawing and Sketching from Nature, for the use of Schools. By J. I. Kiddle, King William's College, Isle of Man. Oblong folio, stiff cover, 2s.

Artist's Assistant,

A Series of Proportioned Letters in various Styles. Royal oblong 8vo, stiff cover, 1s. 6d.

MUSIC.*Taylor's Student's Text Book of the Science of Music.*

For use in Colleges and Schools. 6s.

"This is a good and sound book, which cannot fail to recommend itself to the earnest musical student."—*Literary World*.

"We know of no book on the theory of music which is in itself so elaborate and yet so complete; which embraces so many subjects, nor which is more comprehensible."—*The London Figaro*.

"It is rare that we have seen a more complete and well arranged text book."—*Music Trades Review*.

Taylor's Manual of Vocal Music.

Being a complete Guide to Singing at Sight. 1s. 6d.

A Certificated Teacher writes:—"I cannot imagine a teacher having any trouble with the 'Music Difficulty' if he uses this Manual."

"One of the best books for young students that have been published."—*Scotsman*.

"We may especially draw attention to the section headed 'Directions for the Conduct of a Practical Singing Lesson,' which contains much sound and valuable advice to teachers."—*Musical Times*.

"The directions for conducting a class are admirable."—*Choir*.

Taylor's Choice Secular School Songs,

With an Introduction for the use of Teachers. 3d.

Taylor's Child's First Catechism of Music. 2d.*Philips' Music Sheets.*

For use in connection with Taylor's "Manual of Vocal Music," and for general purposes of Musical Instruction. Printed in two colours. Size—33 by 44 inches. The set of 15 sheets complete, £1 10s. Or mounted on cloth, £2 12s. 6d.

These sheets, which are unique of their kind, being produced on a larger scale than has hitherto been attempted, and printed in two colours for the sake of clearness when used with large classes, proceed in order from the earliest rudiments, and afford material for the full explanation of any musical passage.

LONDON: G. PHILIP & SON, 32 FLEET STREET.
LIVERPOOL: CAXTON BUILDINGS, & 49 & 51 SOUTH CASTLE STREET.

PHILIPS' SERIES OF CLASS-BOOKS.

| | |
|---|--------------|
| CLASS-BOOK OF MODERN GEOGRAPHY , with Examination Questions, by WILLIAM HUGHES, F.R.G.S. <i>New edition, revised and greatly enlarged.</i> Crown 8vo, cloth .. | s. d. 3 6 |
| ELEMENTARY CLASS-BOOK OF MODERN GEOGRAPHY . By WILLIAM HUGHES, F.R.G.S. <i>New edition, revised and enlarged.</i> Foolsap 8vo .. | 1 6 |
| OUTLINES OF GEOGRAPHY , by W. LAWSON, St. Mark's College, Chelsea. <i>New edition, entirely re-written and extended.</i> Foolsap 8vo, cloth .. | 3 6 |
| GEOGRAPHY OF THE BRITISH COLONIES AND FOREIGN POSSESSIONS . By the Rev. JOHN P. FAUNTHORPE, M.A., F.R.G.S., Principal of Whitelands College, Chelsea. <i>Fourth edition, revised and enlarged.</i> Crown 8vo, cloth .. | 2 6 |
| MANUAL OF BRITISH HISTORICAL GEOGRAPHY . By W. J. C. CRAWLEY. Foolsap 8vo, cloth .. | 2 0 |
| CLASS-BOOK OF PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY , with numerous Diagrams, and Examination Questions. By WILLIAM HUGHES, F.R.G.S. <i>New edition, entirely re-written and extended.</i> Foolsap 8vo, cloth .. | 3 6 |
| ELEMENTARY CLASS-BOOK OF PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY , with Diagrams, by WILLIAM HUGHES, F.R.G.S. Foolsap 8vo, cloth.. | 1 0 |
| THE GEOGRAPHY OF RIVER SYSTEMS . By W. LAWSON. <i>New and revised edition</i> Foolsap 8vo, cloth .. | 1 0 |
| THE GEOGRAPHY OF COAST LINES . By W. LAWSON. <i>New and revised edition</i> Foolsap 8vo, cloth .. | 1 0 |
| THE GEOGRAPHY OF THE OCEANS , Physical, Historical, and Descriptive. With Maps and Charts. By J. FRANCON WILLIAMS, F.R.G.S. Foolsap 8vo, cloth | 2 6 |
| ENGLISH HISTORY FOR SCHOOLS . By JOHN CURNOW, B.A., LL.D. Crown 8vo, cloth .. | 3 6 |
| OUTLINES OF ENGLISH HISTORY . For Students preparing for Examination. By R. F. BREWER, B.A. Fcap. 8vo. | 0 6 |
| MANUAL OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR . Including the Analysis of Sentences, with copious Exercises. By R. F. BREWER, B.A. Foolsap 8vo, cloth .. | 1 0 |
| SCHOLAR'S HANDBOOK OF ENGLISH ETYMOLOGY . By JAMES MARTIN Foolsap 8vo, stiff cover .. | 0 3 |
| ADVANCED ARITHMETIC FOR SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES . By THOMAS WILFRED, late Normal Master, St. John's College, Battersea. Crown 8vo, cloth .. | 3 6 |
| ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON ARITHMETIC . For Schools and Colleges. By the same Author. Crown 8vo, cloth | 1 6 |

George Philip and Son, Publishers, London and Liverpool.

PHILIPS' SERIES OF CLASS-BOOKS.

| | |
|---|--------------|
| MENTAL ARITHMETIC. For Schools and Colleges. By the same Author. <i>New and enlarged edition.</i> Foolsap 8vo, cloth | s. d. 2 0 |
| INTRODUCTORY MENTAL ARITHMETIC. By T. W. PIPER. Foolsap 8vo, stiff cover | 0 6 |
| THE "STANDARD" ALGEBRA. For the use of Beginners. By W. ALLEN WHITWORTH, M.A., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. Foolsap 8vo, stiff cover, 6d.; cloth | 0 9 |
| THE ELEMENTS OF EUCLID. Containing the First Six Books, with a Selection of Geometrical Problems for solution, to which are added Parts of the Eleventh and Twelfth Books. By JAMES MARTIN. Crown 8vo, cloth | 3 6 |
| This Book may be also had in parts, viz.— Book I., cloth, 1s. Books I. and II., 1s. 6d. | |
| A GRADUATED COURSE OF PROBLEMS ON PRACTICAL PLANE AND SOLID GEOMETRY. With Miscellaneous Exercises in Practical Plane and Solid Geometry, Etymology of Geometrical Terms, &c. Crown 8vo, cloth .. | 3 6 |
| ACOUSTICS, LIGHT, AND HEAT. By T. W. PIPER. Crown 8vo, cloth, with numerous Illustrations | 2 6 |
| CLASS-BOOK OF ELEMENTARY MECHANICS. By WILLIAM HEWITT, B.Sc. Crown 8vo, cloth, with numerous Illustrations | 1 6 |
| CLASS-BOOK OF INORGANIC CHEMISTRY. By D. MORRIS, B.A. <i>New and enlarged edition.</i> Illustrated. Crown 8vo, cloth | 2 6 |
| CLASS-BOOK OF GEOLOGY. By F. WOLLASTON HUTTON, F.G.S. Extra foolscap 8vo, cloth | 1 6 |
| A MANUAL OF VOCAL MUSIC. For use in Public Schools and Colleges. By JOHN TAYLOR. Crown 8vo, cloth .. | 1 6 |
| THE STUDENT'S TEXT-BOOK OF THE SCIENCE OF MUSIC. By the same Author. Crown 8vo, cloth | 6 0 |

PHILIPS' SERIES OF READING BOOKS, for use in Public Elementary Schools, and *specially adapted to meet the requirements of the New Code.* Edited by JOHN G. CROMWELL, M.A., Principal of St. Mark's College, Chelsea. *Uniformly printed in foolscap 8vo, and strongly bound in cloth.*

| | | | |
|---------------------------------------|--------------|----------------------------------|--------------|
| Primer 80 pp. .. | s. d. 0 6 | Fourth Book .. 288 pp. .. | s. d. 1 4 |
| First Book—Part I., 96 pp. .. | 0 6 | Fifth Book .. 320 pp. .. | 1 9 |
| First Book—Part II., 96 pp. .. | 0 6 | Sixth Book .. 352 pp. .. | 2 0 |
| Second Book .. 160 pp. .. | 0 9 | | 2 6 |
| Third Book .. 208 pp. .. | 1 1 | | 1 0 |

George Philip and Son, P

